



# ENGLISH GUIDE & WORK BOOK

(The Ultimate Guidance for Success)



*Based on the New Syllabus and New Testing Pattern - 2019*



## Authors

**S. GURUVAYURAPPAN**, M.A., M.Sc., M.Phil., M.Ed.,  
Director, Namakkal.

**G. GEOFFREY DAVIDSON**  
Director Training, Salem.

**A. GOPAL**, M.A., M.Ed., M.Phil.,  
MAM Matric Hr. Sec. School, Mettur, Salem.

**T.S. RAAM KAPIL**, M.A., M.Phil., B.Ed.,  
PG Asst. in English, Salem.

## SURYA PUBLICATIONS<sup>®</sup>

(A unit of Shyamala Group)

### Corporate Office:

No. 1, Sugar Mill Colony,  
Salai Kumaran illam, Madurai Road,  
**Tirunelveli - 627 001.**  
Phone : 0462 - 2338899, 2338484  
Mobile : 94431-58484, 95978-39822  
E-mail : suryaguides@yahoo.com

### Registered Office:

New No. 59, 4<sup>th</sup> Avenue,  
Opp. to Govt. Boys Hr. Sec. School,  
**Ashok Nagar, Chennai - 600 083.**  
Ph : 044 - 24744484  
Mobile: 94421-58484, 94425-58484  
E-mail: srigangapublications5@gmail.com

website : [www.suryapublications.in](http://www.suryapublications.in)

Price ₹ 280/-

Published By

**B. ARUMUGAM**

**© SURYA PUBLICATIONS**

(A unit of **Shyamala** Group)

## OUR BANK DETAILS

### TIRUNELVELI ACCOUNT

Account Name : **SURYA PUBLICATIONS**  
Account Number : **446971431**  
Bank Name : **INDIAN BANK**  
IFSC Code : **IDIB000T034**  
Branch Name : **TIRUNELVELI JUNCTION**


Account Name : **SURYA PUBLICATIONS**  
Account Number : **510909010051752**  
Bank Name : **CITY UNION BANK**  
IFSC Code : **CIUB0000230**  
Branch Name : **PALAYAMKOTTAI**

### CHENNAI ACCOUNT

Account Name : **SRI GANGA PUBLICATION**  
Account Number : **928507483**  
Bank Name : **INDIAN BANK**  
IFSC Code : **IDIB000A031**  
Branch Name : **ASHOK NAGAR**

Account Name : **SRI GANGA PUBLICATION**  
Account Number : **512020010022514**  
Bank Name : **CITY UNION BANK**  
IFSC Code : **CIUB0000230**  
Branch Name : **PALAYAMKOTTAI**

## FOREWORD

Success in the Examination is considered the sweetest when it happens to be the outcome of our toil. Keeping this objective in mind, students look for a universal guidance to facilitate their process of acclaiming success. To fulfill this requirement,  **English Guide and Workbook** for **XI standard** is brought out to enable the students to secure maximum marks in the public examination.

This Guide and Workbook has been designed in accordance with the New Syllabus and the New Testing Pattern for public exam. It not only addresses all activities in the text but also provides answers to all communication skill enrichment activities. It deals with each and every unit intensively and extensively. Solutions for the tasks given have been up-dated so as to make you learn at ease.

The Warm-Up questions given in the beginning of each unit have been answered appropriately to help the students think freely and express their views frankly. The ICT section enclosed with each unit focuses on the wholesome learning of Grammar Exercises and there are solutions for them to spur the students to explore more and more. Thus this guide comes to you and the teachers as a Ready Reckoner to all language activities in each unit.

We do look forward to receiving your valuable suggestions and feedback. We do seek your sustaining support for the best outcome of this book.

Wish you the most successful Academic year with your 

– Publisher



## ENGLISH GUIDE & WORK BOOK

Unit	Contents	Page No.	
<b>1</b>	<b>PROSE</b>	<b>THE PORTRAIT OF A LADY</b>	<b>1</b>
		Synonyms	<b>3</b>
		Antonyms	<b>6</b>
		Short Answers	<b>9</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>11</b>
		Prefixes and Suffixes	<b>14</b>
		Homophones	<b>14</b>
		Determiners	<b>17</b>
		Tenses	<b>18</b>
	<b>POEM</b>	<b>ONCE UPON A TIME</b>	<b>23</b>
		Poem Appreciation	<b>26</b>
		ERC	<b>27</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>29</b>
	<b>SUPPLEMENTARY</b>	<b>AFTER TWENTY YEARS</b>	<b>31</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>35</b>
	<b>ICT CORNER</b>	Snakes and Ladders	<b>38</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>PROSE</b>	<b>THE QUEEN OF BOXING</b>	<b>40</b>
		Synonyms	<b>43</b>
		Antonyms	<b>45</b>
		Short Answers	<b>47</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>48</b>
		Abbreviations and Acronyms	<b>49</b>
		Modal Verbs	<b>53</b>
		Prepositions	<b>54</b>
	<b>POEM</b>	<b>CONFESSIONS OF A BORN SPECTATOR</b>	<b>59</b>
		Poem Appreciation	<b>62</b>
		ERC	<b>64</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>67</b>
	<b>SUPPLEMENTARY</b>	<b>A SHOT IN THE DARK</b>	<b>69</b>
		Paragraphs	<b>72</b>
	<b>ICT CORNER</b>	Modal Verbs	<b>75</b>

<b>3</b>	<b>PROSE</b>	<b>FORGETTING</b>	<b>76</b>
		Synonyms	79
		Antonyms	82
		Short Answers	84
		Paragraphs	86
		Clipped Words	88
		Passivisation	92
		Subject and Verb Agreement	95
	<b>POEM</b>	<b>LINES WRITTEN IN THE EARLY SPRING</b>	<b>98</b>
		Poem Appreciation	99
		ERC	100
		Paragraphs	103
	<b>SUPPLEMENTARY</b>	<b>THE FIRST PATIENT (PLAY)</b>	<b>106</b>
		Paragraphs	110
	<b>ICT CORNER</b>	Describing a Process	112
<b>4</b>	<b>PROSE</b>	<b>TIGHT CORNERS</b>	<b>114</b>
		Synonyms	116
		Antonyms	118
		Short Answers	119
		Paragraphs	122
		Idioms	125
		Phrasal Verbs	125
		Conditional Clause	128
		Question Tags	130
		Building Dialogue	132
		<b>POEM</b>	<b>MACAVITY - THE MYSTERY CAT</b>
	Paragraphs		140
	Poem Appreciation		141
	ERC		143
	<b>SUPPLEMENTARY</b>	<b>WITH THE PHOTOGRAPHER</b>	<b>147</b>
		Paragraphs	150
	<b>ICT CORNER</b>	Conditional Clauses	152

5	PROSE	<b>THE CONVOCATION ADDRESS</b>	154
		Synonyms	157
		Antonyms	161
		Short Answers	164
		Paragraphs	166
		Reported Speech	171
		Letter Writing	172
	POEM	<b>EVEREST IS NOT THE ONLY PEAK</b>	177
		Poem Appreciation	179
		Paragraphs	181
		ERC	183
	SUPPLEMENTARY	<b>THE SINGING LESSON</b>	185
		Paragraphs	189
	ICT CORNER	Reported Speech	192
6	PROSE	<b>THE ACCIDENTAL TOURIST</b>	194
		Synonyms	196
		Antonyms	198
		Short Answers	200
		Paragraphs	202
		Foreign Words	204
		Transformation of Sentences	209
	POEM	<b>THE HOLLOW CROWN</b>	216
		Poem Appreciation	220
		ERC	221
		Paragraphs	224
	SUPPLEMENTARY	<b>NEVER NEVER NEST (PLAY)</b>	226
		Paragraphs	229
	ICT CORNER	Form Filling	233



UNIT

1

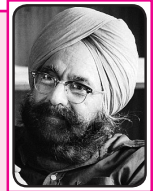
THE PORTRAIT OF A LADY

Khushwant Singh

PROSE



About the Author

- Author** : Khushwant Singh
- Born** : 15<sup>th</sup> August 1915, Punjab.
- Education** : • Law at Stephen's College, New Delhi. • King's College, London.
- Career** : • Lawyer in London and Lahore • Indian Foreign Service • Journalist
- Famous Works** : • The Mark of Vishnu • A Train to Pakistan • We Indians  
• Success Mantra • A History of Sikhs • Death at my Door Step
- Awards** : • Padma Bhusan, 1974. • Padma Vibhushan, 2007.  
• Sahitya Academi Fellowship Award, 2010.
- Died** : 20<sup>th</sup> March 2014



Warm Up

Based on the visuals given give five words/phrases each to describe these two family types.

NUCLEAR FAMILY	JOINT FAMILY
 More time for each other	 More of sharing
Greater privacy	Less privacy
Greater responsibility	Shared responsibility
Self-supporting	Dictated life style
Limited wants	More wants for more people

SUMMARY

This short story 'The Portrait of a Lady' has been written by the famous Indian writer Khushwant Singh. He served as the editor of several literary and news magazines. As a writer he is best known for his keen secularism, sarcasm and love for poetry. In this short story he describes the love and affection between a grandson and a grandmother. It may have some auto biographical note.

The grandmother was an old lady with wrinkled skin. She must have been very pretty in her youth. Her husband, the grandfather's portrait was hung above the mantelpiece in the drawing room. He wore a big turban and loose fitting clothes. He had a long white beard which covered the major portion of his chest and he looked as if he was hundred years old. Grandmother had always been short, fat and slightly bent. She walked around the house in clean white dress. She always kept one hand on her waist to balance her stoop and the other telling the beads of her rosary.

The grandmother and the author were good friends. The author was left with his grandmother in the village because his parents went to live in the city. She used to help him to go to school. Everyday morning she recited her prayer thinking that the author would listen and learn the prayer by heart. When she accompanied him to school she carried some stale chapattis for the stray dogs. While the children inside a temple learnt alphabet and prayer, she sat inside and read the scriptures.

When the parents were settled comfortably in the city they called the author and the grandmother. In the city, the author and his grandmother were not very close. She did not accompany him to school. She was not happy to know that in the city school they did not teach about God. She was not interested in the music class too. When he joined the University he was given a separate room and the common link between grandson and grandmother was broken. She spent most of her time with the spinning wheel reciting her prayers. In the afternoon she sat in the verandah feeding hundreds of little sparrows with broken bread pieces.

When he went abroad for further studies, his grandmother went up to the railway station. But she was not emotional. After five years he came back and she was at the station to receive him. When she embraced him he could hear her reciting prayers.

That evening a change came over her. She did not pray. She collected some old ladies from the neighbourhood and was playing a drum for a long time without minding their words to stop that. Next day she fell ill. The doctor said that it was not serious. But she said that her end was near. She stopped talking to her people. She lay peacefully in bed praying with her beads. In a short time she died. When her body was lifted for cremation thousands of sparrows spread all over the place. When the author's mother threw some bread crumbs they refused to eat. When her body was carried out of the house, all the sparrows flew away quietly.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 4-5

mantelpiece	-	shelf projecting from the wall above a fireplace
absurd	-	inconsistent / illogical
fables	-	tales / stories
hobbled	-	walked unsteadily
puckered	-	wrinkled
expanse	-	wide area
monotonous	-	unchanging / boring
snapped	-	broke / cut
seclusion	-	isolation
bedlam	-	noisy confusion
perched	-	sat / rested
rebukes	-	scoldings
dilapidated	-	damaged
pallor	-	an unhealthy pale appearance
shroud	-	cloth used to wrap a dead person

## MEANINGS

wrinkled	lines on the face and skin	pretty	beautiful, attractive
portrait	painting, drawing or photograph	mantelpiece	place above the fire place
sort	type	revolting	opposing
absurd	stupid, illogical	fables	stories

bent	not straight	certain	sure
terribly	very	hobbled	walked unsteadily
spotless	clean	stoop	bent
locks	hair	scattered	spread everywhere
pale	whitish	puckered	wrinkled
constantly	regularly	inaudible	cannot be heard
expanse	widespread, large area	serenity	calmness
contentment	satisfaction	monotonous	boring
bothered	minded	stale	old, not fresh
several	many	growling	barking
rolled by	passed by	distressed	upset
snapped	broke	seclusion	isolation
resignation	calm acceptance	rarely	sometimes
reciting	saying	relaxed	rested
veritable	real	bedlam	noisy confusion
perched	sat	shooed	drove away
cherished	enjoyed	clasped	embraced
frivolous	playful	rebukes	scolding
sagging	hanging	dilapidated	damaged
persuade	induce	mild	slight
omitted	left out	protested	objected
ignored	disregarded	suspect	doubt
pallor	unhealthy pale	customary	routine
shroud	cloth to cover the dead body	mourning	feeling sad
crude	rough	cremated	burnt
wrapped	covered	corpse	dead body

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

- That seemed to be quite **absurd** and undignified.  
a) stupid                      b) healthy                      c) cunning                      d) kind
- She **hobbled** about the house in **spotless white**.  
a) walked straight              b) walked unsteadily              c) walked quickly              d) walked happily
- Her silver locks were scattered untidily over her pale **puckered** face.  
a) clean                      b) calm                      c) wrinkled                      d) beautiful
- An **expanse** of pure white serenity breathing peace and contentment.  
a) limited                      b) shrunk                      c) vastness                      d) taste

5. She said her morning prayer in a **monotonous** sing song.  
a) interesting      b) meaningful      c) pious      d) boring
6. The common link of friendship was **snapped**.  
a) strengthened      b) avoided      c) needed      d) broken
7. My grandmother accepted her **seclusion** with resignation.  
a) readiness      b) isolation      c) involvement      d) need
8. Hundreds of little birds collected around her creating a veritable **bedlam** of chirruping.  
a) mistake      b) beginning      c) ending      d) confusion
9. Some came and **perched** on her legs.  
a) ran      b) sat      c) gave      d) bit
10. Her happiest moments were with her sparrows whom she fed longer and with frivolous **rebukes**.  
a) praise      b) kindness      c) scolding      d) talking
11. For several hours she thumped the sagging skins of the **dilapidated** drum.  
a) good      b) damaged      c) professional      d) big
12. A peaceful **pallor** spread on her face and we knew that she was dead.  
a) darkness      b) whiteness      c) happiness      d) sadness
13. She had been old and **wrinkled** for the twenty years that I had known her.  
a) spotted      b) crumpled      c) spirited      d) shortened
14. She had been young and **pretty**, and even had a husband.  
a) pious      b) kind      c) humble      d) beautiful
15. She hobbled about the house in **spotless** white.  
a) dirty      b) dull      c) bright      d) clean
16. One hand resting on her waist to balance her **stoop** and the other telling the beads of her **rosary**.  
a) walk      b) breath      c) bent      d) dress
17. Her silver locks were **scattered** untidily.  
a) given      b) tied      c) opened      d) spread
18. Her lips constantly moved in **inaudible** prayer.  
a) strong      b) meaningful      c) careful      d) noiseless
19. An expanse of pure white serenity breathing peace and **contentment**.  
a) satisfaction      b) interaction      c) commitment      d) affection
20. From sunrise to sunset she sat by her wheel spinning and **reciting** prayer.  
a) saying      b) preparing      c) writing      d) listening

Answers									
1. a	2. b	3. c	4. c	5. d	6. d	7. b	8. d	9. b	10. c
11. b	12. b	13. b	14. d	15. d	16. c	17. d	18. d	19. a	20. a

**SELF EVALUATION**

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. He did not look the **sort** of person who would have wife and children.   
a) type                      b) small                      c) short                      d) rich
2. As for my grandmother being young and pretty, the thought was almost **revolting**.   
a) fighting                      b) accepting                      c) opposing                      d) reaching
3. No, we were **certain** she had been always been as we had known her.   
a) doubtful                      b) hard                      c) easy                      d) sure
4. Old, so **terribly** old that she could not have grown older.   
a) very                      b) happily                      c) quickly                      d) slowly
5. Her silver **locks** were scattered untidily.   
a) cover                      b) hair                      c) dress                      d) hand
6. Her silver locks were scattered untidily over her **pale** puckered face.   
a) bright                      b) clean                      c) whitish                      d) coloured
7. Her lips **constantly** moved in inaudible prayer.   
a) regularly                      b) quietly                      c) quickly                      d) slowly
8. An expanse of pure white **serenity** breathing peace and contentment.   
a) scenery                      b) calmness                      c) quickness                      d) fast
9. I loved her voice but never **bothered** to learn it.   
a) asked                      b) minded                      c) went                      d) pushed
10. After a breakfast of a thick, **stale** chapatti we went to school.   
a) fresh                      b) many                      c) little                      d) old
11. She carried **several** stale chapattis with her for the village dogs.   
a) few                      b) many                      c) small                      d) big
12. As the years **rolled by** we saw less of each other.   
a) passed by                      b) stormed in                      c) called on                      d) broke into
13. She was **distressed** that there was no teaching about God and the scriptures.   
a) ready                      b) understood                      c) upset                      d) asked
14. My grandmother accepted her seclusion with **resignation**.   
a) acceptance                      b) attitude                      c) smile                      d) anger
15. She **rarely** left her spinning wheel to talk to anyone.   
a) often                      b) never                      c) sometimes                      d) always
16. Only in the afternoon she **relaxed** for a while to feed the sparrows.   
a) worked                      b) rested                      c) talked                      d) listened

17. Hundreds of little birds collected around her creating a **veritable** bedlam of chirruping.  
 a) various                      b) great                      c) real                      d) unreal
18. She smiled but never **shooed** them away.  
 a) shot                      b) looked at                      c) carried                      d) drove
19. When I left I **cherished** the moist imprint as perhaps the last sign of physical contact between us.  
 a) enjoyed                      b) thought                      c) noticed                      d) pushed
20. While she **clasped** me in her arms I could hear her reciting her prayers.  
 a) clapped                      b) touched                      c) pushed                      d) embraced
21. Her happiest moments were with her sparrows whom she fed longer and with **frivolous** rebukes.  
 a) serious                      b) playful                      c) favour                      d) hard
22. For several hours she thumped the **sagging** skins of the dilapidated drum.  
 a) hanging                      b) tight                      c) strong                      d) mild
23. We had to **persuade** her to stop to avoid overstraining.  
 a) dissuade                      b) extend                      c) influence                      d) listen to
24. It was a **mild** fever.  
 a) strong                      b) heavy                      c) high                      d) slight
25. Only a few hours before the close of the last chapter of her life she had **omitted** to pray.  
 a) started                      b) left out                      c) remained in                      d) joined
26. We **protested**.  
 a) supported                      b) gathered                      c) helped                      d) objected
27. But she **ignored** our protests.  
 a) disregarded                      b) regarded                      c) accepted                      d) understood
28. Even before we could **suspect** her lips stopped moving.  
 a) understand                      b) mistook                      c) doubt                      d) sure of
29. We lifted her off the bed and, as is **customary** laid her on the ground.  
 a) understanding                      b) heavy                      c) light                      d) routine
30. We went to her room with a **crude** stretcher to take her to be cremated.  
 a) rough                      b) refined                      c) small                      d) large

**OPPOSITES**

wrinkled	×	smooth	hard	×	soft
loose	×	tight	absurd	×	reasonable
short	×	long	fat	×	lean
bent	×	straight	certain	×	doubtful

spotless	×	stained	scattered	×	gathered
pale	×	bright	constantly	×	inconstantly
inaudible	×	audible	pure	×	impure
serenity	×	agitation	contentment	×	dissatisfaction
monotonous	×	interesting	tiny	×	big
thick	×	thin	stale	×	fresh
distressed	×	joyful	rarely	×	often
snapped	×	joined	cherished	×	hated
moist	×	dry	arrival	×	departure
frivolous	×	sensible	rebuke	×	praise
dilapidated	×	stable	persuade	×	dissuade
mild	×	strong	near	×	far
omitted	×	included, added	protested	×	agreed
ignored	×	accepted	customary	×	abnormal / unusual
crude	×	refined			

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

- That seemed quite absurd and undignified.  
a) ridiculous      b) silly      c) reasonable      d) strange
- No, we were certain she had always been as we had known her.  
a) sure      b) truly      c) doubtful      d) clear
- Her lips constantly moved in inaudible prayer.  
a) unconstantly      b) inconstantly      c) disconstantly      d) misconstantly
- An expanse of pure white serenity breathing peace and contentment.  
a) agitation      b) calmness      c) stillness      d) disturbed
- She said her morning prayer in a monotonous sing-song.  
a) boring      b) dull      c) tedious      d) interesting
- She was distressed that there was no teaching about God and the scriptures.  
a) dejected      b) frustrated      c) dismayed      d) joyful
- When I left I cherished the moist imprint as perhaps the last sign of physical contact between us.  
a) hated      b) enjoyed      c) tried      d) took
- On my first day of arrival her happiest moments were with her sparrows whom she fed longer and with frivolous rebukes.  
a) sensible      b) playful      c) laughing      d) wonderful

9. We had to **persuade** her to stop overstraining.  
a) dissuade      b) invade      c) assure      d) compel
10. We lifted her off the bed and as is **customary** laid her on the ground.  
a) normal      b) requested      c) abnormal      d) unaccounted

Answers									
1. c	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. d	6. d	7. a	8. a	9. a	10. c

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. She had been old and **wrinkled** for twenty years that I had known her.   
a) crushed      b) crumbled      c) straight      d) bend
2. She had even had a husband, but that was **hard** to believe.   
a) easy      b) soft      c) difficult      d) accepted
3. He wore a big turban and **loose** fitting clothes.   
a) free      b) movable      c) tight      d) decent
4. She had always been **short** and fat and slightly bent.   
a) small      b) huge      c) big      d) tall
5. She had always been short and **fat** and slightly bent.   
a) thin      b) thick      c) familiar      d) known
6. She had always been short and fat and slightly **bent**.   
a) folded      b) straight      c) crooked      d) beautiful
7. She hobbled about the house in **spotless** white.   
a) clean      b) neat      c) dotted      d) dirty
8. Her silver locks were **scattered** untidily over her pale puckered face.   
a) spread      b) sprinkled      c) gathered      d) dispersed
9. Her silver locks were scattered untidily over her **pale** puckered face.   
a) bright      b) dull      c) light      d) soft
10. Her lips constantly moved in **inaudible** prayer.   
a) quite      b) noisy      c) silent      d) knowingly
11. An expanse of **pure** white serenity breathing peace and contentment.   
a) unpolluted      b) untainted      c) impure      d) dispure
12. An expanse of pure white serenity breathing peace and **contentment**.   
a) discontentment      b) inconstentment      c) satisfaction      d) acceptance
13. She had already washed and plastered with yellow chalk, a **tiny** earthen ink-pot.   
a) small      b) big      c) hard      d) soft

14. After a breakfast of **thick**, stale chapatti with a little butter and sugar spread on it.  
a) heavy                      b) plenty                      c) thin                      d) thing
15. After a breakfast of thick, **stale** chapatti with a little butter and sugar spread on it.  
a) fresh                      b) old                      c) many                      d) few
16. The link of friendship was **snapped**.  
a) broken                      b) joined                      c) appreciated                      d) hated
17. She **rarely** left her spinning wheel to talk to anyone.  
a) seldom                      b) hardly                      c) often                      d) thinly
18. When I left I cherished the **moist** imprint as perhaps the last sign of physical contact between us.  
a) watery                      b) dipped                      c) dry                      d) warm
19. On my first day of **arrival** her happiest moments were with her sparrows whom she fed longer and with frivolous rebukes.  
a) reaching                      b) visited                      c) happened                      d) departure
20. On my first day of arrival her happiest moments were with her sparrows whom she fed longer and with frivolous **rebukes**.  
a) curse                      b) punishments                      c) praise                      d) requests
21. For several hours she thumped the sagging skins of the **dilapidated** drum.  
a) damaged                      b) destroyed                      c) old                      d) stable
22. It was a **mild** fever.  
a) slight                      b) strong                      c) known                      d) strange
23. Only a few hours before the close of the last chapter of her life she had **omitted** to pray.  
a) left out                      b) joined                      c) included                      d) absent
24. We **protested**. But she ignored our protests.  
a) started                      b) ended                      c) disagreed                      d) agreed
25. We protested. But she **ignored** our protests.  
a) accepted                      b) rejected                      c) shouted at                      d) looked at
26. We went to her room with a **colour** stretcher.  
a) rough                      b) thin                      c) big                      d) refined

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

1. Answer the following in one or two sentences based on your understanding of the story.

Page: 5

- a. Describe the grandfather as seen in the portrait.

In the portrait the grandfather was found wearing a big turban and loose fitting clothes. He had a long white beard which covered the major portion of his chest and he looked as if he was hundred years old.

- b. Why was the author left with his grandmother in the village?

The author was left with his grandmother in the village because his parents went to live in the city.

**c. Where did the author study in his childhood?**

The author studied in the village in his childhood. His school was attached to a temple and the priest was their teacher.

**d. Why did the grandmother accompany the author to school?**

The grandmother accompanied the author to school because she had a chance to feed the stray dogs with stale chapattis. Moreover she had time to read scriptures inside the temple.

**e. What made the dogs follow the grandmother after school hours?**

When the grandmother with the author went back home, she used to throw chapattis to the dogs. So the dogs followed the grandmother after school hours.

**f. Why didn't the grandmother feel sentimental when the author went abroad for higher education?**

The grandmother was old but she believed that she would live to see the author after his completion of studies abroad. So she was not sentimental.

**g. What was the happiest time of the day for grandmother?**

In the afternoon the grandmother felt relaxed to feed the sparrows with bits of bread. That was the happiest time of the day for grandmother.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS****Answer the following in one or two sentences****1. What was the grandmother's reaction when the author went abroad?**

The grandmother went to the railway station. She was not emotional. She was saying her prayers with the beads of her rosary. She silently kissed him on his forehead.

**2. Why did the grandmother carry stale chapattis with her?**

She carried the chapattis to feed the street dogs.

**3. When was the common friendship between grandmother and grandson broken?**

When he joined the University for higher education, he was given a separate room. Then the common friendship was broken.

**4. Describe the life of the grandmother after the friendship with the author was snapped.**

She accepted her isolation with resignation. She spent her time with the spinning wheel reciting her prayers. In the afternoon, she was feeding a host of sparrows with bits of bread.

**5. How did the sparrows react at the death of the grandmother?**

Thousands of sparrows sat scattered on the floor without their usual chirruping. The author's mother tried to feed them but they refused to eat. When the body was carried, they flew away quietly.

**2. Answer the following questions in three or four sentences each.**

Page: 5

**a. Describe the author's grandmother.**

The author's grandmother was an old woman with wrinkled skin. She had been like that for twenty years. Once she had been young and pretty.

**b. What was the daily routine of the grandmother at home?**

The grandmother walked about the house in neat white dress. She always had a rosary with her. Every morning she woke the author up for the school. While she bathed him, she said her prayer. Then she went to school with him. She had some stale chapattis with her to feed the stray dogs.

**c. How is school education in the village different from that in the city?**

The village school was attached to a temple. The priest acted as the teacher and taught the children alphabet and morning prayer. In the city, school is run in a separate building and qualified teachers are appointed to teach the children. There is no teaching about God and the scriptures.

**d. The grandmother appreciated the value of education. Give instances in support of your answer.**

According to the grandmother children should be taught prayer and scriptures. She was very upset to know that in city school there was no teaching about God. She did not think that the subjects taught in the school would not teach any value to the children.

**e. The grandmother was strong-minded. Justify.**

When the author decided to go abroad for further studies, he thought that the grandmother would be upset. But she was not sentimental. When she went to the railway station with the author, she did not show any emotion. She only prayed for the author.

**f. How did the grandmother spend the last few hours of her life?**

When the grandmother realised that her end had come, she stopped her prayer. She gathered some women. She got an old drum and sang the home-coming of warriors. The next morning she was taken ill. The doctor said that it was not serious. But she said that her end was near. She stopped talking to her people. She lay peacefully in bed praying and saying her beads. In a short time she died.

**3. Answer the following in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.****a. The grandmother played a vital role in the author's formative years. Give your own example of how elders have a positive influence on the younger generation. Include examples from the story also.**

In the lesson 'The Portrait of a Lady', Khushwant Singh describes the importance of the grandmother in shaping the life of the author. When the author was a child, his whole life was filled with the activities of his grandmother. When the author was left to the care of the grandmother, he was led by her from morning till evening. In his formative period, she taught him the importance of prayer and God. Usually the elders play a vital role in the life of children. Elders are experienced people who understand what is good for the future of the children. So they could have a positive influence on the younger generation. In this story the grandmother took him to a school which was attached to the temple. There children were taught good values. She showed her strong will to the author which must have influenced him.

**b. As young Khushwant Singh, write a letter to your parents describing your daily routine expressing your thoughts and feelings about staying in the village.**

Ayothiappattanam,  
Salem,

28 June 2018.

Dear Appa and Amma,

I am doing well here. I hope you both are fine there. My grandma takes care of me well. Everyday morning she wakes me up with her prayer song. Though it is in a monotonous tone, I like it. She bathes me and gets me ready to go to school. Then she will get my slate, a small tiny earthen ink-pot and a red pen. She will tie them all in a bundle and give it to me. She will take some stale chapattis with her and accompany me to the school. My school is attached to a temple and the

priest teaches us alphabet and morning prayer while we sit in the verandah. Grandma will sit inside and read the scriptures. In the evening many stray dogs will follow us and grandma will feed them with the stale chapattis. I enjoy my life in the village. But I always miss you both. When will you come here?

Your loving son,  
Khushwant Singh.

**c. Animals are capable of empathy. Substantiate this statement with examples from the story as well as your own experiences.**

Animals are capable of empathy. Their love towards their owners cannot be described. Dogs will always follow their owners even if they beat them. Sometimes they follow their cars or two-wheelers. In this story the little sparrows were fed by the grandmother every day. They sat on her legs, shoulders and head. She also enjoyed that. Every day they waited for her. On her death day the sparrows came but refused to eat the little crumbs. When her body was lifted they flew away quietly. My uncle had a big dog. When he died, all of us totally forgot about the dog. When his body was lifted for cremation, the dog gave a groaning voice. Then we realised that the dog did not eat anything the whole day. After all the ceremony, my aunty gave some food but it refused to eat. It died the next day.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

**Answer the following in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.**

**1. How do you say that the grandmother was a pious lady? Give examples from the story**

This short story 'The Portrait of a Lady' was written by the famous Indian writer Kushwant Singh. The grandmother was an old lady with wrinkled skin. She walked around the house in clean white dress. Every morning she recited her prayer thinking that the author would listen and learn the prayer by heart. When she accompanied him to school she carried some stale chapattis for the stray dogs. While the children inside the temple learnt alphabet and prayer, she sat inside and read the scriptures. When she went to city she was not happy to know that in the city school they did not teach about God. She was not interested in the music class too. When he joined the University he was given a separate room. She spent most her time with the spinning wheel reciting her prayers, When she embraced him at the railway station he could hear her reciting prayers. One evening a change came over her. She did not pray. Next day she fell ill. She lay peacefully in bed praying with her beads. In a short time she died.

**2. Describe the last days of the grandmother.**

This short story 'The Portrait of a Lady' was written by the famous Indian writer Kushwant Singh. The grandmother was an old lady with wrinkled skin. She walked around the house in clean white dress. She always kept one hand on her waist to balance her bent. When she went to city she was not happy to know that in the city school they did not teach about God. She was not interested in the music class too. She spent most of her time with the spinning wheel reciting her prayers. One evening a change came over her. She did not pray. She collected some old ladies from the neighbourhood and was playing a drum for a long time without minding others' words to stop that. Next day she fell ill. The doctor said that it was not serious. But she said that her end was near. She stopped talking to her people. She lay peacefully in bed praying with her beads. In a short time she died. When her body was lifted for cremation thousands of sparrows spread all over the place. When his mother threw some bread crumbs they refused to eat. When her body was carried out of the house, all the sparrows flew away quietly.

**VOCABULARY**

a) Read the following words and choose the correct antonyms from the options given.

Page: 5

Words	Options				Answer
moist	a. marshy	b. arid	c. slimy	d. sultry	<b>arid</b>
frivolous	a. serious	b. sad	c. furious	d. happy	<b>serious</b>
omitted	a. isolated	b. rejected	c. contracted	d. included	<b>included</b>
protest	a. promote	b. apprehend	c. accept	d. project	<b>accept</b>
serenity	a. simplicity	b. anxiety	c. absurdity	d. stupidity	<b>anxiety</b>
scattered	a. sprinkled	b. multiplied	c. gathered	d. covered	<b>gathered</b>
monotonous	a. interesting	b. tiresome	c. fragrant	d. satisfying	<b>interesting</b>

b) Fill in the blanks choosing the appropriate compound words from those given in the box.

Reeta hurried along the road, dressed in her spotless new dress towards the bus stop. Before sunset she had to reach the house of her grandmother. But the first half-hour travel was slow due to traffic jam. Her homecoming would be regarded with joy. She was overstraining herself to reach the place. When she finally stepped into the courtyard, she was received with a big hug by her kind aunt. She was in time to join the gentlefolk at the village for a singsong.

singsong	overstraining	spotless	gentlefolk	grandmother
courtyard	sunset	half-hour	homecoming	

c) Match the words in Column A with their pairs in Column B to form compound words and write them in Column C.

A	B	C
mantel	lashes	mantelpiece
eye	wheel	eyelashes
water	gate	waterproof
bee	knob	beehive
toll	piece	tollgate
door	proof	doorknob
spinning	hive	spinning wheel

d) Frame meaningful sentences of your own using the following expressions from the story. Use a dictionary if required.

i) **the thought was almost revolting**

We proposed to visit Kashmir but the thought was almost revolting.

ii) **an expanse of pure white serenity**

Sitting along with the grandchildren, she was like an expanse of pure white serenity.

iii) **a turning point**

A job in an MNC was a turning point in Gita's life.

**iv) accepted her seclusion with resignation**

The Sadhu accepted his seclusion with resignation.

**v) frivolous rebukes**

The children enjoyed the frivolous rebukes from their kind grandmother.

**e) Prefixes and Suffixes**

Page: 7

- A **prefix** is a letter or a group of letters which is added to the beginning of a root word in order to modify it. Usually the new word formed is the opposite of the given word.  
eg: **in** + audible - **inaudible**
- A **suffix** is a letter or a group of letters added to the end of a root word. By adding suffixes the grammatical function of the word changes.  
eg: constant + **ly** - **constantly**
- Words that are derived or formed from the base word by adding prefixes and suffixes are called '**derivatives**'.

**Form two derivatives from each of the following words.**

**Eg:** honest - dishonest, honesty

manage	manger	management
differ	different	difference
beauty	beautify	beautiful
peace	peaceful	peacefulness
arrange	arranger	arrangement
collect	collector	collection
approve	disapprove	approval
narrate	narrator	narration
class	classic	classical

**f) Homophones and Confusables**

- Homophone is a word which is pronounced like another word but has a different spelling or meaning.  
eg: rite, right

**Fill in the blanks with suitable homophones .****i) brake/break**

- We have a short **break** between the sessions.
- The car skidded to a halt when I applied the **brake**.

**ii) waste/waist**

- Shivani wears a belt around her **waist**.
- We should never misuse or **waste** natural resources.

**iii) principle/principal**

- Oxygen is the **principal** element present in the earth's crust.
- Both these machines work on the same **principle**.

**iv) bread/bred**

- Turtles should be **bred** in a healthy environment.
- I like to have toasted **bread** for breakfast.

**v) lesson/lessen**

- a) This medicine will lessen your pain.
- b) Finally, the manager learnt a lesson the hard way.

**vi) pale/pail**

- a) The child looks very sick and pale.
- b) I need a pail of water to wash these cups.

**vii) through/threw**

- a) Ravi picked the banana peel and threw it in the dustbin.
- b) The soldiers had to pass through a dark tunnel.

**viii) corps/corpse**

- a) The corpse was covered with a shroud.
- b) A five-day annual training camp for the senior cadets of National Cadet Corps has been organised.

Page: 8

**LISTENING ACTIVITY**

Read the following statements and the given options. Now, listen to your teacher read aloud a passage or play it on a recorder. You may listen to it again if required to help you choose the right options.

- i) According to Napoleon 'Good mothers make good \_\_\_\_\_.**  
 a) housewives      b) jobs      c) nations      d) ideas      **Ans: c**
- ii) Mothers exhibit \_\_\_\_\_ love.**  
 a) unauthorized      b) unapproved      c) unacceptable      d) unconditional      **Ans: d**
- iii) \_\_\_\_\_ mothers care much for their children.**  
 a) Adapted      b) Adopted      c) Adoptive      d) Adaptable      **Ans: c**
- iv) \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important thing in the world.**  
 a) Wealth      b) Power      c) Love      d) Influence      **Ans: c**
- v) Love should be extended to \_\_\_\_\_ too.**  
 a) friends      b) relative      c) countrymen      d) creatures      **Ans: d**

**SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

- a) Work in pairs and arrive at five points that bring out the benefits and challenges of living in either a nuclear family or a joint family. Share your views with your class.**

NUCLEAR FAMILY		
	Benefits	Challenges
1.	Personalised attention.	Limited role models.
2.	Accommodative spirit.	Limited companions for play.
3.	Financial status satisfactory.	Lack of support from the elders.
4.	Sharing and caring.	Lack of personal help during emergency.
5.	Good education affordable.	Greater responsibility to shoulder.

**b) Build a conversation of eight to ten sets of exchange, with your grandmother discussing the incidents that happened in your school that day.**

- Peter : Hi, grandma. Let me tell you what happened during lunch.  
 Grandma : Anything unusual?  
 Peter : Yes. My friend Velan shed tears.  
 Grandma : Did anyone beat or scold him?  
 Peter : No, grandma. He belongs to a financially backward family. Today, he came to school without taking breakfast.  
 Grandma : He did not have anything to eat at lunch.  
 Peter : Yes, but I sat near him and shared my food with him.  
 Grandma : Wonderful! Sharing is strengthening.  
 Peter : Velan shed tears while eating the meal. I told him I would bring extra meal for him daily.  
 Grandma : I appreciate your gesture of kindness. God bless you and Velan!

**c) Every member contributes to forming a happy family. Share your views for a minute or two with your class.**

Every member ought to contribute to forming a happy family. A spirit of accommodation is essential. Petty quarrels can be avoided by understanding and adjusting. Sharing is strength. By shouldering responsibilities willingly, the members of the family lead a friction-free life. No one should give into a feeling of superiority. One should treat the other equally, and no room should be given for bias or prejudice. All should work together to make the family a university of values and virtues.

**READING**

Read the passage on "Laughter Therapy" and answer the questions that follow.

Page: 10

**a. How does laughter help one to cope with stress?**

Laughter provides full support for your muscles. It releases a rush of stress breaking endorphins.

**b. Which word in the text (para 2) means the same as 'dedicated'?**

committed.

**c. Why do you think voluntary laughter provides the same physiological as well as psychological benefits as spontaneous laughter?**

Laughter comes from the body, not from the mind. To get the benefit of laughter one need not feel it in mind.

**d. 'Laughter is the best medicine'. Explain.**

Laughter removes stress from our body. Breathing exercises are used to prepare the lungs for laughter. Laughter combines a method of acting and visualization. Laughter helps in psychological development.

**e. Given below is a set of activities. Which of these are followed in the 'Laughter Yoga' technique?**

- clapping
- stretching of arms and legs
- breathing exercises
- eye contact
- chanting

**f. 'Laughter therapy also plays a crucial role in social bonding.' How?**

Laughter therapy brings many people together. They work together to achieve the same goal. It brings team spirit among the people. So it plays a crucial role in social bonding.

**GRAMMAR****Articles and Determiners**

- Determiners are words placed in front of a noun to clarify what the noun refers to.

Types of Determiners		
Articles	Demonstrative	Possessive adjectives
a, an, the	this, that, these, those	my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their
Quantifiers	Numbers	Ordinals
some, any, few, little more, much, every	one, two, three, four, twenty, hundred	first, second, third, last, next

**a. Read the paragraph below and fill in the blanks using 'a', 'an' or 'the'.**

Page: 11

It is said that 1 the computer is 2 an electronic extension of the human brain. Therefore, in principle, 3 a computer can do all those activities which 4 the human brain can do. Today computers are found to be 5 the most useful devices as knowledge providers. Another important field of application of computers is 6 the development of robots. 7 The internet has brought 8 a drastic change in communication systems.

**b. In the following paragraph, insert 'a', 'an' or 'the' wherever necessary and rewrite the sentences.**

In our family, we have planned to take the children to a zoo next Sunday. A van has been arranged and we are sure to have a comfortable journey. The zoo is an interesting place for the children who enjoy watching the animals and want to know more about them. Even the youngsters love to visit the zoo.

**c. Fill in the blanks with appropriate determiners. (Articles have been included)**

Once the emperor gave a bag of seeds to this council of ministers and said that he would give them six months' time to grow the seeds. Whoever does a good job will be made the second emperor of that empire. All the ministers took their task seriously. After six months some ministers had small plants in their pots. A few had very large plants. Others had medium sized plants. The emperor entered the hall. He was much amused to see some plants. He called the first minister and asked him what he did with the seed. The first minister explained the process he adopted to make his plant grow. The emperor called all the other ministers to explain what they did. Only one minister had come with an empty pot. They laughed loudly at the foolishness of this minister. But the emperor applauded him and made him the second Emperor. Do you know why? He had given them boiled seeds which would not grow. Only that minister was honest.

**d. Fill in the blanks with appropriate determiners.**

- They came early but there was little (little/a little) work to do.
- Anand invited a few (few/a few) friends for the birthday party.
- The teacher gave every (all/every) student a separate topic for the assignment.
- Most of (Most of/Many) the water overflowed from the tank.
- Each one of my friends (friend/friends) wished me on my birthday.
- Vijai had no (no/any) idea of the problem.
- Adhi had taken many (much/many) photos during the programme.
- Some (Some/Few) girls who attended the class informed the others about the test.

## Tenses

Page: 14

**a. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets and read the completed passage aloud.**

The people of India, as a whole, 1 are (be) warm hearted and hospitable. Any calamity in any part of the world immediately 2 arises (arise) their charity and generosity and a committee 3 will be (be) promptly 4 set (set) up to collect funds to help the distressed. The most endearing quality in them 5 is (be) the respect they show for the work done in any capacity. They 6 believe (believe) in what we 7 call (call) the dignity of labour.

**b. Now, use the verbs given in brackets in the following sentences in their correct forms.**

- I like (like) to spend time with my friend whenever I am (be) free.
- He is (is) likely to miss the train. He is running (run) up to the station.
- At the moment they are waiting (wait) at the bus-stop. But I do not know (not know) their plans for the journey.
- They firmly believe (believe) in the existence of God.
- We hear (hear) a lot of noise because the new buildings transmit (transmit) sound vacant.
- She always makes (make) excuses for coming late.
- The Prime Minister leaves (leave) for America to meet the delegates tomorrow.

**c. You are a commentator for a 5000 metre running race. Use simple present and present continuous tenses and complete the commentary from the beginning to the end of the race. Read the completed passage aloud.**

The 5000 metre race is about to begin. Lined up at the starting point, from left to right, are John of Great Britain, Peter of Nigeria and Jeeva of India. The runners are warming up for great event. Now they 1 are taking (take) their positions on the track. They 2 are (be) all ready for the start. There 3 goes (go) the starter's gun! Yes, the race has begun. John 4 is leading (lead) and Jeeva 5 is following (follow) him closely.

**d. Read the extract from Kayal's diary entry regarding her Nepal Trek, and fill in the blanks with the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.**

DAY 1. We left (leave) Anna International Airport in Chennai two days ago catching a direct flight to Kathmandu in Nepal. We spent (spend) a day sightseeing. Kathmandu is full of people, rickshaws and the smell of sandalwood, I've never been (be) on a trip like this before. So I'm really excited.

DAY 2. It was raining (rain) when we reached Pokhara, Nepal's second largest city, and saw the snowy peaks of the Himalayas for the first time. We reached (reach) Pokhara after a hair-raising six-hour bus journey along very narrow roads with a lot of hairpin bends. The bus was (be) so full that one person had to share the driver's seat.

DAY 3. We began (begin) our trek at last. We are at about 900 metres and the weather is warm and humid. For lunch we had chips and yak cheese sandwiches. I didn't like them very much. I'm thrilled that we pitched (pitch) tents for our camps in the dense forests. Page: 15

DAY 4. Yesterday a landslide blocked (block) our path and we had to use ropes to get over it. This morning we walked along the river Kali Gandaki through dense forests of oak trees and we pitched our camp at Tukuche below the Annapurna mountain range. The main danger in addition to landslides, is 'yak attack.' Yaks are (be) not dangerous but you have to be careful if you meet a herd of them because they can push you off the sides of the mountain.

- DAY 5. We met a lot of children on our trek through the villages. They were playing (play) in the pool of muddy rain water as we left the place. We have already climbed 2,400 metres. Up here, it never rains (rain) and there are no trees. It is (be) windy and dusty and I am always thirsty.
- DAY 6. Yesterday we went (go) to the mountainside of the township of Mukthinath, at 3600 metres. The thin air with less oxygen there left (leave) us breathless. We felt (feel) that we couldn't go any further. We drank (drink) a lot of extra fluids to prevent altitude sickness.
- DAY 7. We turned around today and started to descend to Jomosom. As we went down, the oxygen filled our blood again and we seemed to fly (fly) instead of walking.
- DAY 8. We went back to Pokhara in a small plane yesterday. It was exciting (excite) when we were flying (fly) between the mountain peaks. We arrived in Kathmandu this afternoon and we spent (spend) our last few hours in shopping. We leave for Chennai tomorrow. We've had a trip of a lifetime.

**e. In the following passage, circle the verbs in simple present tense and underline the verbs in simple past. The first one has been done for you.**

- i) Unless one is upright there is no use in being a charming fellow. Sometimes it is better to be honest than attractive. These are the great truths of modern life which Shyam never realised. He never said an ill-natured word in his life. He was always polite and spoke softly to everybody.
- ii) That night he strolled into the Palette Club about eleven o'clock, and found Trevor sitting by himself in the long room. "Well Alan, did you get the picture finished all right?" he said, as he lit his cigarette. "Finished and framed, my boy!" answered Trevor, "and by-the-bye, you have made a conquest. That old model you saw is quite devoted to you. I had to tell him all about you – who you are, where you live, what your income is, what prospects you have."
- iii) "And now tell me how Laura is. The old model was quite interested in her." "You don't mean to say you talked to him about her?" said Hughie. "Certainly I did. He knows all about the relentless colonel, the lovely Laura, and the 10000." "You told that old beggar all my private affairs?" cried Hughie, looking very red and angry. "My dear Alan," cried Hughie, "I shall probably find him waiting for me when I go home."

**f. Fill in the blanks using Past perfect tense forms of the verbs.**

- i) I had never seen (see) such a beautiful sunrise before I came here.
- ii) We were not able to stay overnight as we had not reserved (reserve) the tickets in advance.
- iii) Nirmala had been (be) to the concert several times.
- iv) Mariappan knew Pudukottai so well because he had lived (live) there for five years.
- v) Yusuf understood the problem because he had experienced (experience) the situation earlier.
- vi) Catherine did not have any cash because she had lost (lose) her purse.
- vii) My father had been (be) to Mumbai once before.
- viii) The cat had chased (chase) the bird before it flew out of yard.

- ix) Edith had visited (visit) several doctors before she found out what the problem was with her knee.  
 x) If we had called (call) the manager ahead, we would not have needed to wait so long for a table.

**g. Read the following news report and underline the past perfect forms of the verb and circle the simple past tense form of the verb.**

INDIA BEAT PAKISTAN TO WIN BLIND CRICKET WORLD CUP

Chasing a huge target of 308 runs, India romped home in the penultimate over of the match to defeat Pakistan and win the Blind Cricket World Cup. India started off their chase in a cracking manner, but had lost two quick wickets. Sunil Ramesh rose to the occasion as he played a great knock to help India beat Pakistan and had scored 93 runs. Earlier India had won the toss and had decided to bowl first. Pakistan had amassed a huge score of 307 for eight in 40 overs. Their openers had given them a brisk start which the later batsmen capitalized on.

**h. Read the following extract and fill in the spaces with the right form of verbs and complete the passage. The first one done for you.**

- i) The poet stops to hear the maiden singing while she 1 is cutting (cut) and 2 binding (bind) the grain. The song of the lady 3 fascinates (fascinate) the poet who 4 stands (stand) there to listen to the song. The girl 5 is singing (sing) a sad song.
- ii) During the monsoon, a tender slightly warm breeze 1 blows (blow) on a cloudless afternoon. A sort of fragrance 2 rises (rise) from the wet grass and trees in the sunlight. It 3 seems (seem) as if the warm breath of the exhausted earth 4 falls (fall) against one's skin. A sweet voiced bird somewhere 5 chirps (chirp) repeatedly.

**i. Read the news item that appeared in a daily and fill the blanks with suitable forms of the verbs given in brackets.**

Page: 17

Ever since social networking sites entered our lives, they 1 have served (serve) as platforms where users could use the virtual space offered by these social media. However, recent incidents 2 have caused (cause) many to question the freedom to express views on various issues and in some cases it 3 has become (become) a dangerous platform. Social Contact 4 has transformed (transform) people. They 5 have developed (develop) an addiction to it.

**j. Read the following passage and correct the errors you come across.**

1. Rajan slowly settle down in his retired life. His pension plus what his wife bring from the household work she does helped them to meet their requirements. Life is easy until one Sunday. His granddaughter Madhu come crying. The clay doll in her hand had broken into two. Rajan pacify her and promise to mend it. This small repair work become the founding stone of a very prosperous venture into making clay dolls which earn him great respect.

Ans: Rajan slowly **settled** down to his retired life. His pension plus what his wife **brought** from the household work she **did** helped them to meet their requirements. Life **was** easy until one Sunday. His granddaughter **came** crying. The clay doll in her hand had broken into two. Rajan **pacified** her and promised to mend it. This small repair work **became** the founding stone of a very prosperous venture into making clay dolls which **earned** him great respect.

2. Games and sports helps in recreation. Soccer, cricket, lawn tennis or wrestling is eagerly watched by millions of fans all over a world. It helps one got a temporary relief from the tensions of a day. The dedication displayed by all player in the field indicates the mental and spiritual development of the player.

Ans: Games and sports **help** in recreation. Soccer, cricket, lawn tennis or wrestling are eagerly watched by millions of fans all over **the** world. It helps one **get** a temporary relief from the tensions of a day. The dedication displayed by all **players** in the field indicates the mental and spiritual development of the **players**.

## WRITING

### a. Notice

- i. Prepare a notice to be displayed on the notice board of your school or the students of Class 11, informing them about the educational tour that has been arranged for them in the next month.

**ATTENTION**  
**STUDENTS OF CLASS 11**

**EDUCATIONAL TOUR**

PROPOSED PLACE – KODAIKANAL  
PROPOSED DATES – 7 & 8 JULY

---

Interested students can enrol their names to  
Mr. Shankar, English teacher on or before 4 July

- ii. Write a notice about the inauguration of a laughter club in your school.

**Mahatma Gandhi HSS, Tirunelveli.**

**Inauguration of NSK Laughter Club**

20 June 2018

This is to inform the students of I & II year Higher Secondary class that it has been proposed to start a LAUGHTER CLUB in our school. Its inauguration will be at 4.30 pm on 28 June 2018. It will be conducted in our school playground. All the Higher Secondary students are invited to attend the function.

Sd/-  
SPL.

### b. Message.

Page: 18

You are the Sports Captain of your school. Write a message to the Physical Director requesting him to be present during the football team selection scheduled for tomorrow.

15 June

*Dear sir,*

As you know, tomorrow we have football team selection at 4 pm in our school football ground. I request you to be present during the selection time.

Sd/-  
**Balu, (Sports Captain)**

- c. **Do you exercise regularly? If you do, which of the following activities do you prefer? Discuss and share with your partner a few ideas about your preference.**

a) walking      b) working out in a gym      c) swimming      d) cycling

Yes, I exercise regularly. I prefer walking in the early morning. It is very pleasant because I breathe in fresh, pure air. There is little noise. There is little traffic. Everywhere peace and serenity reigns. It is a great pleasure watching a few women spilling water in front of their houses and drawing kolams with colour powder. Listening to the birds chirp refreshes me. So, I prefer walking.

## TASK

Page: 19

**You are Mani/Megalai of class XI, President of the English Club of your school. Draft a speech of the topic 'Reading Maketh a Complete Man' to be delivered in the school assembly.**

"Reading makes a full man" said English philosopher Sir Francis Bacon and no truer words were said than these. Reading nourishes the intellect and nurtures the imagination. There is nothing more relaxing and soothing than sitting in the corner of a room with a book in your hands. Without travelling, without even moving an inch, the reader is transported to a new world and is exposed to a new culture and new ideas.

Good books are storehouses of human knowledge and wisdom. Anyone who has the key can enter these store houses and help himself. What is the key? Simply the readiness to read. He who can read can store his mind with the noble thoughts of the great thinkers of the world. The man who never opens a book has a comparatively empty mind. He, no doubt, learns something from his own experience and from others; but to what mankind has learnt and thought and done, his mind is a blank. But he who reads widely and judiciously has a full mind.

The aim of education is to draw out or develop our faculties. Reading is one of the means by which we educate ourselves; hence reading has the same aim as education, namely development of our faculties. Man is born imperfect and by life-long endeavour he tries to perfect himself. Reading the thoughts of great men fills him with nobility and inspiration, and acquaintance with current history, science and literature fits him for the struggles of life. No doubt reading books gives you a cutting edge. It equips you with all the requisites to make you emerge successful in the field chosen by you. It infuses in you the skills to solve any problem and make an informed decision.

Certainly, reading makes a full man.

\*\*\*◆\*\*\*

UNIT

1

ONCE UPON A TIME

Gabriel Okara

POEM

About the Author

**Author** : Gabriel Okara  
**Born** : 24<sup>th</sup> April 1921, Nigeria.  
**Education** : Self - Educated man  
**Career** : • Book binder • Journalist • Radio broadcaster • Newspaper editor  
**Famous Works** : • The fisherman's invocation • The Voice • Little Snake and Little Frog  
 • Yesterday may be Tomorrow • The Call of the River Nun  
**Awards** : • Best award for Literature, 1953 • Commonwealth Poetry Award



Warm Up

a. Guess what friendly words these two gentlemen exchange when shaking hands.



Hi, Smith, How are You?  
 Hi, David, I am fine, thank you. How are you?  
 So far so good. I am pleased to be with you again.

b. The children in the picture are watching an exciting sporting event, where their school team is winning. Suggest suitable utterances reflecting their feelings:



1. Hey! We are winning the match!
2. The last ball, give us a sixer!
3. O, that's a fine shot!
4. Look at the movement of the bat!

c. Given a chance, any adult would wish to become a child again for many reasons. Fill the boxes with some of what you imagine could be the reasons.

e.g. I need not worry about project deadlines.	I need work on holidays to complete the target.
I can wear my pyjamas the whole day.	On holidays I can get up late.
I can sleep as long as I like.	Any time during my summer vacation, I can play with my friends.

**SUMMARY**

The poem 'Once Upon a Time' has been written by Gabriel Okara, a poet and novelist. His poems transit from everyday reality to moments of delight and moves back to reality. In this poem he laments the negative change in the society. The modern society has become hypocritical in everything. He tells the modern children how he was when he was young and the change the society brought on him when he grew up. It is written in the form of a monologue. The poet Okara in this narrative monologue condemns the duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. Here, a father laments to his son about the negative changes that come into the attitude and behaviour of humans, when they grow into adults.

He says that people used to be truthful when they laughed and the honesty would be reflected in their eyes. But, people of modern times laugh outwardly. Their handshakes used to be warm and happy conveying a sense of closeness, but nowadays the handshakes have become a mere outward show. Now people are not trust-worthy and have become so selfish that they are concerned only about their personal benefits.

People welcome others and exchange pleasant enquiries, but those words come only from their tongues and not from the depth of their hearts. Humans have learnt the art of changing their facial expressions according to situations merely to ensure social acceptance. They wear masks and exhibit multiple faces.

The poet admits that he has also changed into a hypocrite. However, he tells his son that though he fakes his expressions, he does all these against his will. He says that he wants to become a child again and laugh genuinely. He wants to unlearn the unreal things and relearn how to laugh genuinely as he had done once upon a time. When he laughs before the mirror he sees no expression. His teeth are bare like that of the fangs of a snake. So, he asks his son to show him how to laugh the way he used to laugh when he was a kid like him.

**GLOSSARY**

Page: 22

laugh with their teeth	-	to fake a laugh, laugh without associated emotions
ice-block-cold eyes	-	eyes lacking a feeling of warmth or endearing expression
search behind my shadow	-	people are hypocritical and they don't mean what they say
While their left hands search my empty pockets	-	evaluating the narrator's worth and power or calculating how he could be exploited
cocktail face	-	face showing mixed emotions
conforming smiles like a fixed portrait smile	-	wearing a standard deceitful artificial smile on all occasions
good-riddance	-	expression of relief at being free of an unwanted person
fangs	-	teeth of a venomous snake, used to inject poison

**MEANINGS**

indeed	sure
portrait smile	artificial smile
conforming	matching / agreeing
muting	toning down

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 23

**1. Based on your understanding of the poem answer the following questions in one or two sentences each.****a. What do you associate with the title of the poem?**

Once upon a time people were true to their words and deeds. Now-a-days people are hypocrites.

**b. What is the relationship between the narrator and the listener?**

Narrator is the father and the listener is the son.

**c. What happens to the poet when he visits someone for the third time?**

When the poet visits someone for the third time he is not welcomed by the other.

**d. Pick out the expressions that indicate conflicting ideas.**

Laugh with their teeth, ice-block-cold-eyes, shake hands without hearts, cocktail face, portrait smile, to say "goodbye" to mean 'good-riddance'

**e. How does the poet compare his face with dresses?**

As we change the dresses according to different occasions, we change our face according to different people and occasions.

**f. What does the poet mean when he says 'goodbye'?**

When the poet says 'goodbye', he means 'good-riddance'. It means that the poet is relieved of an unwanted person.

**g. What pleasantries does the poet use to fake cordiality?**

The poet uses pleasantries like "Feel at home", and "come again" to fake cordiality.

**h. What does he desire to unlearn and relearn?**

He desires to unlearn all the hypocritical behaviour and relearn real human relationship.

**i. How is the poet's laugh reflected in the mirror?**

The mirror reflects the poet's laugh as a laughter with the teeth; fake laughter.

**j. What does the poet long for?**

The poet longs for the old life with human values where we had real laughter and real concern for others.

**k. Mention the qualities the child in the poem symbolises.**

The child in this poem symbolises good qualities of human life without hypocrisy.

**2. Fill in the blanks choosing the words from the box given and complete the summary of the poem.**

The poet Okara in this narrative monologue painfully condemns the (a) duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. Here, a father laments to his son about the negative changes that creep into the attitude and behaviour of humans, when they grow into (b) adults. He says that people used to be (c) genuine when they laugh and the honesty would be reflected in their eyes. But, people of modern times laugh (d) superficially. Their handshakes used to be warm and happy conveying a sense of togetherness, but nowadays the handshakes have become a mere (e) falsity. He warns his son that people are not trust-worthy and have become selfish that they are concerned only about their (f) personal benefits.

People utter words of welcome and exchange (g) pleasantries, but those words come only from the tip of their tongues and not from the depth of their hearts. Humans have learnt the art of changing their (h) facial expressions according to situations merely to ensure social acceptance. They wear (i) masks and

exhibit multiple faces. The narrator admits that he has also changed into a hypocrite. However, he tells his son that though he (j) **fakes** his expressions, he does all these against his will. He says he wants to become a (k) **child** again and laugh genuinely. He wants to (l) **unlearn** the unreal things and (m) **relearn** how to laugh as he had done once upon a time. When he laughs before the (n) **mirror** he sees no expression. His teeth are bare like that of the (o) **fangs** of a snake. So, he asks his son to show him how to laugh the way he used to laugh, when he was a kid like him.

relearn	adults	facial	personal	fangs	child	fakes	superficially
duplicity	genuine	unlearn	falsity	masks	mirror	pleasantries	

**3. A. Interpret each of the following expressions used in the poem, in one or two lines.** Page: 24

**i. 'laugh with their eyes'**

In the olden days people had real laughter, not fake laughter. Their eyes could reflect the reality in their laughter.

**ii. 'shake hands without hearts'**

In the modern world handshake is fake and it does not come from the heart.

**iii. 'like a fixed portrait smile'**

The smile in a portrait is a meaningless smile. The smile of the modern time people is compared with the smile in a portrait.

**iv. 'hands search my empty pocket'**

To show that the handshake of the modern man is fake the poet gives this line. When he shakes hands he tries to find out the financial and social worth of the other person.

**v. 'to unlearn all these muting things'**

The poet wants his laughter to be real. But now he has learnt to smile like others with false face. Now he wants to unlearn whatever he has learnt from the modern world.

**B. Read the lines given below and answer the questions that follow.**

**i. 'But now they only laugh with their teeth,  
While their ice-block-cold eyes .....'**

**a) Who are 'they'?**

They are the people of the modern world.

**b) Explain: ice-block-cold-eyes.**

'Ice-block-cold-eyes' means people laugh without feeling of warmth or endearing expression.

**c) Identify the figure of speech used here.**

Metaphor.

**ii. 'Most of all, I want to relearn**

**How to laugh, for my laugh in the mirror  
Shows only the teeth like a snake's fangs'.**

**a) Why does the poet want to relearn how to laugh?**

Now the poet has realised that he has only a fake laughter. But he wants to give real laughter. So he wants to relearn how to laugh.

**b) Whom does the poet want to relearn from?**

He wants to relearn from his son.

**c) Mention the figure of speech used here.**

Simile.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Read the following sets of poetic lines and answer the questions that follow

1. *“Once upon a time, son*

*They used to laugh with their hearts’*

a) **Who is addressed by the poet here?**

The poet’s son is addressed here.

b) **When did they laugh with their hearts?**

Once upon a time or long back they laughed with their hearts.

c) **What does the poet mean by ‘laugh with their heart’?**

The poet means by ‘laugh with their heart’ genuine laughter not outward laughter. By the phrase ‘laugh with their heart’, the poet means genuine laughter, not outward laughter.

2. *‘Now they shake hands without hearts*

*While their left hands search*

*My empty pockets’.*

a) **What does the poet mean in the first line?**

The poet means that people’s handshake is not genuine.

b) **What do their left hands do?**

Their left hands search the pocket of the other.

c) **Why should their hands search the pockets?**

They are trying to find out the worth of the other person – whether he is rich or influential.

3. *‘Cocktail face, with all their conforming smiles*

*Like a fixed portrait smile’.*

a) **What is a cocktail face?**

Cocktail face is a face which shows mixed emotions.

b) **How do they smile?**

Their smile is not genuine. Their smile is deceitful and artificial.

4. *I have also learnt to say “Goodbye”*

*When I mean “Good-riddance”*

a) **What does the poet mean by “Goodbye”?**

His wish is fake. When he says goodbye he means that he is happy to get rid of him.

b) **What does the poet mean by “Good-riddance”?**

He means that he is happy to be free from an unwanted person.

**C. Explain the following lines with reference to the context.**

Page: 24

i. *‘Once upon a time, son*

*They used to laugh with their eyes’*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘Once Upon a Time’ written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

In this poem he says that in the olden days people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. In the past the poet used to give real laughter which could be seen in his happy eyes.

**ii. 'There will be no thrice'****Reference :**

Gabriel Okara utters this line in his poem 'Once Upon a Time'.

**Explanation :**

In this poem he says that in the olden days people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. In the modern time when people meet others, they say without meaning 'feel at home', and 'come again'. But if we visit them for the third time we will not be welcomed.

**iii. 'I have learned to wear my faces  
Like dresses'****Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

In this poem he says that in the olden days people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. In the modern time people change their facial expressions according to the situation. Thus they become hypocrites. The poet also has learnt to wear many faces as he changes his dresses.

**iv. 'I want to be as a used to be'****Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

In this poem he says that in the olden days people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. In the modern world people's laughter, handshakes and pleasantries are fake, not real. The poet also follows this now but he wants to be as real as he was in the past.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS****Explain the following lines with reference to the context.**

- 'But now they only laugh with their teeth  
While their ice-block-cold eyes  
Search behind my shadow'**

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

He says in this poem that in the olden days, people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. Once they laughed genuinely but now their laughter is fake. They laugh only by showing their teeth without any feeling. Their eyes lack a feeling of warmth. People are hypocritical and they do not mean what they say.

2. *'There was a time indeed  
Then used to shake hands with their hearts  
But that's gone, son'.*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

He says in this poem that in the olden days, people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. Once people shook hands with others with strong feelings in their hearts but now people shake hands only for a show.

3. *'Office face, street face, host face  
Cocktail face, with all their conforming smiles  
Like a fixed portrait smile'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

He says in this poem that in the olden days, people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. Now-a-days people show different faces in different places. They have separate faces for office, street and as host. So the face shows mixed emotions and they have a standard deceitful artificial smile on all occasions.

4. *'And I have learned too  
To laugh with only my teeth  
And shake hands without my heart'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Once Upon a Time' written by Gabriel Okara, a Nigerian poet.

**Explanation :**

He says in this poem that in the olden days, people had real human values and in the modern world people have only fake human values. Now people laugh without feelings and shake hands without any warmth. The poet accepts that he too has learnt to laugh only by showing his teeth and to shake hands with no feeling in his heart.

**4. Answer the following questions in about 100 – 150 words.**

Page: 24

- i. **Explain the things that the poet has learnt when he grew into an adult.**

The poet Okara in his poem 'Once Upon a Time' painfully condemns the duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. Here, a father laments to his son about the negative changes that creep into the attitude and behaviour of humans when they grow into adults. He used to be genuine when he laughed. But now his laughter is fake. He has learnt to laugh without any feeling. Their handshakes used to be warm and happy conveying a sense of togetherness, but nowadays the handshakes have become a mere falsity. He too has learnt to give such handshakes. He has again learnt how to welcome people with words coming only from the lips. Now he can change the facial expressions according to the situations.

- ii. **This poem is nothing but the criticism of modern life. Justify this statement.**

The poet Okara in his poem 'Once Upon a Time' painfully condemns the duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. The poet laments about the negative changes that have come upon the modern society. In the modern world people do not have real laughter; they have only fake laughter. Their eyes do not show any feeling when they laugh. The handshakes have become mere duplicity. People do not have the warmth when they handshake with others. The words of welcome

come only from the lips, not from the heart. Nowadays people change their faces as they change their dresses. The facial expressions change according to the situation. Thus the poet criticises the modern life.

**iii. 'Face is the index of the mind'. Does this adage concur with the views of the poet?**

The poet Okara in his poem 'Once Upon a Time' painfully condemns the duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. The poet laments about the negative changes that have come upon the modern society. It is an old saying 'Face is the index of the mind'. It means that face can reflect the real mind of a person. But because of the changes brought into the modern world this proverb has lost its meaning. People laugh concealing their real intention. People's handshakes do not come from their hearts. So the face does not show reality. In the same way people give words of welcome only from the lips. In the modern world people change their face as they change their dress. Now, in no way does the face show the real mind of a person.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

Answer the following questions in about 100 – 150 words.

**1. What does the poet try to convey in the poem 'Once Upon a Time'?**

The poem 'Once Upon a Time' was written by Gabriel Okara, a poet and novelist. In this poem he laments for the negative change in the society. The modern society has become hypocritical in everything. He tells the modern children how he was when he was young and the change, the society brought on him when he grew up. It is written in the form of monologue. The poet Okara in this narrative monologue condemns the duplicity displayed by adults both in their words and actions. Here, a father laments to his son about the negative changes that come into the attitude and behaviour of humans, when they grow into adults. He says that people used to be truthful when they laughed and the honesty would be reflected in their eyes. But, people of modern times laugh outwardly. People welcome others and exchange pleasant enquiries, but those words come only from their tongues and not from the depth of their hearts. The poet admits that he has also changed into a hypocrite. However, he admits that though he fakes his expressions, he does all these against his will.

### 5. LISTENING ACTIVITY

**First read the questions given below. Next, listen to an excerpt from a poem read out by your teacher or played in a recorder. Note how a child admires and praises the abilities of his/her father. Then tick the right answers from the options given below.**

- i) When the furnace needs to be repaired, they have to hire a man.
 

a) heater	b) furnace	c) stove	d) oven
-----------	------------	----------	---------
- ii) Father knows no word like fail.
 

a) fail	b) frail	c) jail	d) snail
---------	----------	---------	----------
- iii) It is certain that the father would restore the confidence of the family members.
 

a) glory	b) prosperity	c) confidence	d) happiness
----------	---------------	---------------	--------------
- iv) The father will not be able to mend a broken chair.
 

a) table	b) bench	c) chair	d) stool
----------	----------	----------	----------
- v) The children expect their mother to guide them in action.
 

a) mother	b) father	c) teacher	d) guardian
-----------	-----------	------------	-------------

## UNIT

## 1

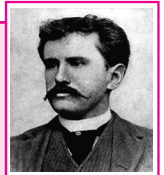
## AFTER TWENTY YEARS

O. Henry

## SUPPLEMENTARY

## About the Author

<b>Author</b>	: O. Henry (William Sydney Porter)
<b>Born</b>	: 11 <sup>th</sup> September, 1862 - North Carolina, America.
<b>Personal interest</b>	: Reading Newspapers and Books
<b>Fame in prison</b>	: • 3 years' imprisonment for misuse of money • Started writing in prison
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • The Gift of the Magi • The Ransom of Red Chief • The Third Ingredient • A Retrieved Reformation • The Cop and the Anthem.
<b>Speciality</b>	: Unexpected twist at the end of his stories, Witticism. • Clever Word Play
<b>Died</b>	: 5th June, 1910.



## Warm Up

Page: 27

- a. What do you expect your close friends to do for you? Beautify the petals with your thoughts.



- b. i. Find out when the International Day of Friendship is celebrated.

30 July.

- ii. How is that day celebrated?

On 27 April 2011 the General Assembly of the United Nations declared 30 July as official International Friendship Day. However, some countries, including India, celebrate Friendship Day on the first Sunday of August. In Oberlin, Ohio, Friendship Day is celebrated on 8 April each year. Initially created by the greeting card industry, evidence from social networking sites shows a revival of interest in the holiday that may have grown with the spread of the Internet, particularly in India, Bangladesh, and Malaysia. Digital communication modes such as the Internet and cell phones may be helping to popularize the custom, since greeting friends en masse is now easier than before.

**c. We have heard of the proverb 'Familiarity breeds contempt'. Do you think that the passage of time strengthens friendship? Share your reasons with your class.**

Yes, I think that the passage of time strengthens friendship. A true friend is one who shares our joys and sorrows. He not only entertains us but also motivates us. He guides us when we are indecisive or directionless. He points out our mistakes gently and makes us choose the right path. His words of consolation in times of trials and tribulations go a long way in bringing normalcy. He may be out of sight but he is not out of mind. He may be far away but he keeps communicating with us. He participates in all our functions. There is no doubt the passage of time makes true friendship stronger.

## SUMMARY

The short story 'After Twenty Years' has been written by O. Henry whose original name was William Sydney Porter. He is a well-known American short story writer. His works romanticized the life of ordinary people in New York City. Here he describes the lives of two friends who parted company twenty years back – how each one changed his life according to the situation.

'After Twenty Years' is a story opens with a policeman on night patrol. It's nearly 10.00' at night. It is quiet as he walks his beat, checking locks for safety. Suddenly, a figure standing in a doorway catches his attention, and he approaches him. The person speaks up and reassures the officer that he is not looking to cause any trouble – just waiting for a friend with whom he had made an appointment 20 years ago to meet at that spot.

The man lights a cigar and tells the lawman about his friend Jimmy Wells, who was more like a brother to him when they were young. He praises Jimmy's character and assures the policeman that he will keep their appointment for 10.00. As it's already quite nearly ten, the officer asks if the man will wait any longer for Jimmy, and the patient friend says he will give him half an hour and the lawman continues his patrol. The patrolman realises that the other man has become very rich.

About 20 minutes later, another man approaches and calls the waiting friend by name - Bob. As the two men greet each other heartily, Bob begins to recognize some unfamiliar characteristics in his friend – he seems taller than he remembered. He accepts his friend's reply that he has grown some in 20 years, until they come across the bright lights of a drug store.

Here, Bob realizes that the man in front of him does not have the same nose as Jimmy, but it is far too late for him to escape arrest from the plainclothesman posing as Jimmy. Before taking him into custody, however, the officer hands Bob a note from Patrolman Wells whom he has unwittingly met earlier. One who came before was actually his friend Bob who is a police man. He realised that Bob is the silky Bob who is a wanted criminal in the north. Jimmy admits he recognized Bob's face from a Chicago police bulletin but did not have the heart to arrest him.

## GLOSSARY

avenue	–	a wide street
habitual	–	regular
nigh	–	almost
twirling	–	twisting and spinning around
intricate	–	complicated
stalwart	–	physically strong
swagger	–	walk in a confident way
vicinity	–	the surrounding area (neighbourhood)

reassuringly	–	making someone feel less doubtful
proposition	–	theory or system
plodder	–	one who toils slowly but steadily
wits	–	intelligent people
groove	–	a dull routine that does not change
razor-edge	–	a critical situation
dismally	–	without happiness and cheer
absurdity	–	quality of being silly and foolish
egotism	–	a feeling of self-importance
outline	–	describe
wires	–	sends a telegraphic message

**1. Answer the following questions in a sentence or two each, based on your understanding of the story.**

**a) Describe the appearance of the policeman on the beat.**

The policeman on the beat moved in the street impressively. He was twisting his club with some complicated movement. He was a physically strong man.

**b) What did he keep doing while on his rounds?**

He was looking at the doors of the shops and turning now and then to watch the traffic carefully.

**c) Why were the streets devoid of people?**

The streets were devoid of people because of the chilly gusts of wind with imminent rain.

**d) What story did the man standing near the hardware store tell the passing cop?**

The man standing near the hardware store told the passing cop that he was waiting for his friend Jimmy Wells. Both of them had made a promise twenty years ago to meet at the same time.

**e) What used to be there in the place of that shop twenty years ago?**

A restaurant named Big Joe' Brady's used to be there in the place of the shop twenty years ago.

**f) Describe the man awaiting the arrival of his friend.**

The man awaiting the arrival of his friend had a pale squire-jawed face. He had keen eyes and a little white scar near his right eye brow. His scarf pin was a large diamond.

**g) Why did the friends part ways?**

The friends parted ways to find their livelihood in their own way. One went to West and the other stayed in New York.

**h) When and how did Bob realise that the tall man was not his friend?**

When they came to a bright electric lamp, Bob looked at the other man. The other man's nose was different from his friend's nose. So he realised that the tall man was not his friend.

**i) Who was the tall man?**

The tall man was a policeman in plainclothes who was sent by Wells, the patrolman.

**j) What did he give Bob?**

He gave a note from Wells to Bob.

**2. State whether the following statements are true or false.**

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| a) The cop suddenly slowed his walk, when he heard the barking of dogs.              | <b>False</b> |
| b) The friends grew up together in the city of New York.                             | <b>True</b>  |
| c) Both Jimmy and Bob were of the same age.  | <b>False</b> |
| d) The friends parted one night after watching a movie together.                     | <b>False</b> |
| e) The friends could not keep in touch because they lost each other's phone numbers. | <b>False</b> |
| f) Bob wanted to stay for half an hour more than the appointed time.                 | <b>True</b>  |
| g) Jimmy grew a little taller after he was twenty.                                   | <b>False</b> |
| h) Bob realised that the tall man was not Jimmy Wells from the shape of his nose.    | <b>True</b>  |

**3. What does each of the following mean in the story? Choose the right option.**

Page: 32

**a) on the beat:**

- i) moving around hitting every one with a stick
- ii) on duty walking around the assigned area
- iii) marching with his heart beating fast

**b) a guardian of peace:**

- i) a watchman
- ii) a holy man
- iii) a policeman

**c) arm in arm:**

- i) with arms linked together
- ii) with weapons in hands
- iii) with handcuffs on wrists

**d) plainclothes man:**

- i) a man who wears simple clothes for grand occasions
- ii) a policeman in civilian clothes while on duty
- iii) a cine artist in ordinary costumes

**4. Answer the following questions in three or four sentences each.****a) What did Bob share with the cop about their friendship?**

Bob said that he and his Jimmy lived together in New York. They were good friends. Twenty years back they had dined in Big Joe' Brady's restaurant. They decided to find their own ways for the livelihood. After the dinner they had taken a promise that they would meet in the place at the same time after twenty years. Bob went to West and Jimmy stayed in New York

**b) What are the strengths and weaknesses of Jimmy Wells from Bob's point of view?**

Jimmy would not go out of New York. He could not earn as much as Bob. Jimmy was slow in his dealings but a good fellow. He would surely keep his promise of meeting him at the particular place though he had taken the promise twenty years ago.

**c) Was Bob hopeful of his friend's arrival? How do you know?**

Bob was hopeful that his friend would come to meet him. He told the policeman that his friend would never forget his promise. He was ready to wait for half an hour more than the appointed time.

**d) How did the cop come to understand that Bob had been successful in the West?**

Bob had an expensive large diamond scarf pin which an ordinary man could not wear. When Bob took out his watch to see the time the cop noticed that it was a handsome watch with the attachment of small diamonds. Thus he came to understand that Bob had been successful in the West.

**e) Bob's life in the West was not a bed of roses. Give reasons.**

Bob said that the life in West was not that easy. West had put him into many critical situations. He had to compete with many people to earn his livelihood.

**f) Why didn't Jimmy Wells, being a cop himself, arrest Bob?**

Jimmy Wells gave a letter to Bob through the plainclothes man. He wrote that when he saw Bob's face he understood he was the wanted criminal in Chicago. But he himself could not arrest him because he was once his best friend.

**g) Who do you think has been more successful between the two? Give reasons.**

Jimmy Wells has been more successful than Bob. He is now a respectable police man though his earning may not be as big as what Bob has. Bob has become a criminal and has earned huge money. But he could not lead a peaceful life.

**5. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 150 words each.****a) Compare and contrast the character of Jimmy Wells and Bob with suitable references from the story to support your view.**

After Twenty Years written by O. Henry – Jimmy Well and Bob friends – lived in New York – parted – to meet after 20 years – Bob to West – Wells stayed – Bob changed a lot – a criminal – Wells a policeman – Bob came – Couldn't recognise – Wells identified – respected friendship – sent another policeman – arrested Bob

O. Henry in his short story 'After Twenty Years' describes the friendship of two men, Jimmy Wells and Bob. They lived in New York. When Bob was eighteen and Jimmy was twenty, they decided to go their own way to find their livelihood. When they parted, they decided to meet each other after twenty years. On that day they dined in Big Joe's Brady's restaurant and said they would meet in the same place at the same time after twenty years. Bob went to the West and Wells stayed in New York. So far they did not have much difference in their characters. But West changed Bob a lot. He became a criminal and earned a lot. Wells became a respectable policeman. As they planned, Bob came to the place at the scheduled time. Wells was also in the same place as the patrolman. Wells identified Bob as the wanted criminal from Chicago but Bob could not identify Wells. In the twenty years Bob became very rich with the ill-gotten money. Wells was not that rich in terms of money but he was rich in character. He respected his friendship with Bob so he did not arrest him. He sent another plainclothes man to arrest him.

**b) 'Means should justify the end' Explain the adage with reference to O. Henry's story.**

Steps should be right – steps to justify the end – Well and Bob friends – Bob rich with ill gotten money – Wells respectable policeman – Bob rich end – means bad – ill gotten money – no help – end justifies the means

'Means should justify the end' means the steps we take to reach the end should be right socially. The steps should justify the end when we reach it. The end may be to become rich but the steps we take to reach our end should justify the end. If we become rich by foul means, the means will not justify the end. O. Henry, in his short story 'After Twenty Years' brings two characters – Jimmy Wells and Bob. Both were good friends. They parted to search for their livelihood. Wells became a respectable policeman but he was not very rich. Bob became very rich but only with ill-gotten money. He was a criminal and he was wanted by the police. His end might be great but his means would never justify the end. At the end, of the story the money he had earned through his criminal activities did not help him. Wells end is not very great but his means as a professional policeman justify his end.

**c) 'Tell me who your friends are and I shall tell you who you are'. How will you explain this statement in the light of Jimmy's and Bob's friendship?**

O. Henry in his short story 'After Twenty Years' introduces two friends – Jimmy Wells and Bob. They were friends for many years. Both of them lived in New York. When Bob was eighteen

and Wells was twenty they parted to find their own means to earn money. When they parted, they decided to meet after twenty years in the same place at the same time. Bob went to the West to find his ways but Wells stayed in New York. After twenty years Bob came to the place and he was met by a patrolman. The patrolman was none other than Wells. He realised Bob but he understood that he was the criminal wanted in Chicago. But he did not want to arrest his friend so he sent another policeman in plainclothes to arrest him. In the beginning their friendship might prove the statement true. But at the end it was totally different.

**d) To your shock you find out that your friend is indulging in some wrong activity. Will you avoid him/her or try to correct him/her? Give reasons for your answer.**

If my friend is indulging in some wrong activity surely it will shock me. I will not avoid him but I will try to correct him. I can give many reasons for this. To err is human. Most of the time people fall into some wrong activity because of some unforeseen circumstances. We have to decide whether we should hate the man or the situation. I will hate the sin rather than the sinner. I have the hope that my friend will listen to me if I tell him in the proper way. Moreover my friend is a nice guy and he can change his way of life if he comes to realise the serious consequences of his action. So I will try my best to mend him, not end friendship.

**e) What would you do in this situation, if you were Jimmy Wells? Substantiate your reason.**

If I were Jimmy Wells I must have done the same as Wells has done. Bob had become a hard core criminal. If he had just started slipping from the right attitude there might have been some possibilities to help him pull out of his criminal activities. But in the given situation it is very difficult to change him. Moreover as a responsible patrolman I may not have any other choice. If I avoided arresting him, he would as usual indulge in unlawful activities to hoard wealth. It is likely that he might attempt homicide to rob the hapless people. Moreover, evading duty would prick my conscience as an honest policeman. In my opinion, nobody is above law. Since duty consciousness takes precedence over friendship, I have Hobson's choice in this case.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

**Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 150 words each.**

**1. Why did Wells avoid arresting Bob?**

After Twenty Years written by O. Henry – Jimmy Wells and Bob friends – lived in New York – parted – to meet after 20 years – Bob to West – Wells stayed – Bob changed a lot – a criminal – Wells a policeman – Bob came – Couldn't recognise – Wells identified – respected friendship – sent another policeman – arrested Bob

O. Henry in his short story 'After Twenty Years' introduces two friends – Jimmy Wells and Bob. They were friends for many years. Both of them lived in New York. When Bob was eighteen and Wells was twenty they parted to find their own means to earn money. When they parted, they decided to meet after twenty years in the same place at the same time. Bob went to the West to find his ways but Wells stayed in New York. After twenty years Bob came to the place and he was met by a patrolman. The patrolman was none other than Wells. He realised Bob but he understood that he was the criminal wanted in Chicago. But he did not want to arrest his friend so he sent another policeman in plainclothes to arrest him. It shows that he respected his friendship but at the same time he wants to do his work properly.

**2. Describe what happened when Bob met the plain clothed man.**

'After Twenty Years' is a story opens with a policeman on night patrol. It was nearly 10.00' at night. Suddenly, a man standing in a doorway caught his attention. The man said that he was just waiting for a friend with whom he had made an appointment 20 years ago to meet at that spot at 10 pm. The man lit a cigar and tells the lawman about his friend, Jimmy Wells. As it's already quite nearly ten, the officer asked him if the man would wait any longer for Jimmy, and he replied that he would give him half an hour and the lawman continued his patrol. About 20 minutes later, another man approached and called the waiting friend by name - Bob. As the two men greeted each other heartily, Bob began to recognize some unfamiliar characteristics in his friend – he seemed taller than he remembered. Then, Bob realized that the man in front of him did not have the same nose as Jimmy, but it was far too late for him to escape arrest from the plainclothesman posing as Jimmy. Before taking him into custody, however, the officer handed Bob a note from Patrolman Wells whom he had unwittingly met earlier. One who came before was actually his friend Bob who was a police man. He realised that Bob was the silky Bob who was a known criminal in the north. Jimmy admitted that he recognized Bob's face from a Chicago police bulletin but did not have the heart to arrest him himself.

\*\*♦♦\*\*

UNIT

1

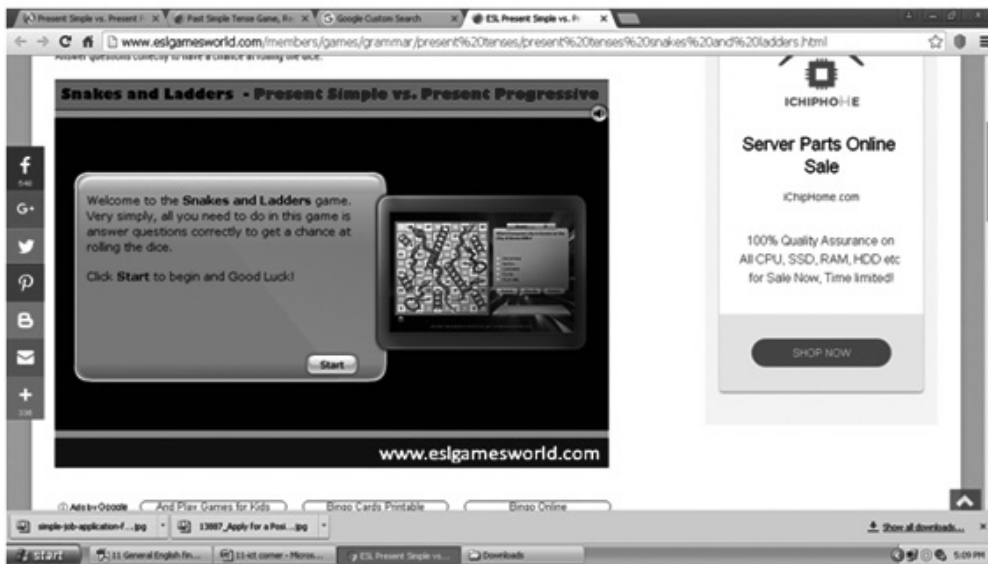
ICT CORNER

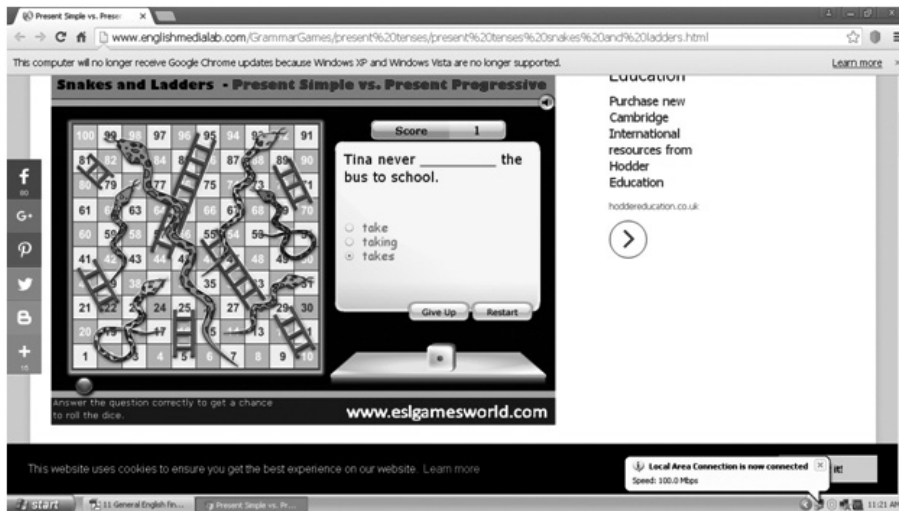
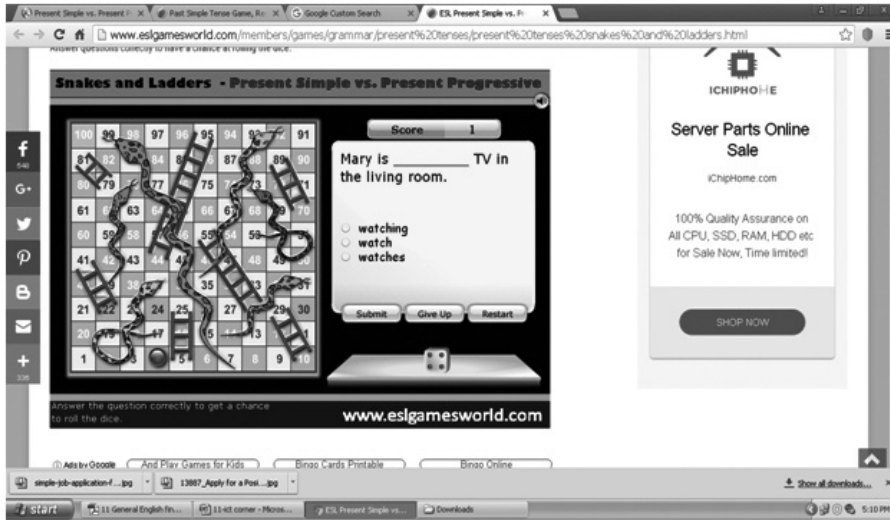
SNAKES & LADDERS

PLAYING GAMES

Snakes and Ladders

Practise the present simple vs. the present continuous tenses by playing this snakes and ladders fun game. Keep playing until you win. Answer the questions correctly to have a chance at rolling the dice.





## UNIT

## 2

## THE QUEEN OF BOXING

M.C. Mary Kom

PROSE

## About the Author

<b>Author</b>	:	Mangte Chungneijang Mary Kom
<b>Born</b>	:	1st March, 1983 - Kangatheri.
<b>Interests at School</b>	:	• Hockey • Football • Athletics • Boxing
<b>Outstanding Achievements</b>	:	• Gold at the 1998 Asian Games in boxing • Silver in 2001 • 6 times World Amateur Boxing Champion • Qualified for 2012 Summer Olympics, World Champion, 2018
<b>Awards</b>	:	• Padma Shri, 2006. • Padma Bhushan, 2013.
<b>Autobiography</b>	:	'Unbreakable' - 2013.



## Warm Up

Page: 34

- ❖ We use various sports equipment to play different indoor and outdoor games. Now, associate the following sports equipment with their corresponding sports and games.

spear	javelin throw	racket	badminton and tennis
pawns	chess	puck	ice hockey
stump	cricket	bow and arrow	archery
Club	golf	oar	boating
striker	carrom	sabre	fencing
dice	backgammon	baton	relay race

- ❖ Have you won any medals? What are the levels to be accomplished to become an international sportsman?

Yes, I have won medals in intra-mural games and district level games.

The various levels to become an international sportsman are:

- ◆ Participating in intramural sports and games.
- ◆ Joining the school team and playing games in the divisional level.
- ◆ Winning the championship cup in the district level tournament.
- ◆ Winning the state level championship.
- ◆ Getting selected for the state team and playing well in the national tournaments.
- ◆ Selection for the national team.

- ❖ What is your favourite sport? Do you play any sport?

My favourite sport is short distance running.

- ❖ In India the number of women pursuing careers in sports is considerably less when compared to men. What do you think are the reasons? Discuss with a partner and share the ideas with the class.

Indians are basically tradition-bound. The role assigned to women in society is to take care of the family. So they have their own limitation to pursue sports beyond certain level. Lack of

sponsorship is another reason. It is not easy for any woman to continue the sports activities without sponsorship. As the sports arena is male-dominated, sponsors hesitate to take up the cause of sportswomen. By nature they are shy and feel inhibited. They do not come forward to exhibit their skills in public. Even their family members hesitate to send them outside for participation in sports.

- ❖ **Regardless of the challenges faced, some women have achieved great success in the field of sports. Here is a list of Indian women celebrities who are accomplished in the field of sports and games.**

Names of personalities	Sports / Games
PV Sindhu	badminton
Geeta Phogat	wrestling
Koneru Humpy	chess
Karnam Malleshwari	weightlifting
Anjali Bhagwat	shooting
Sania Mirza	tennis
Dipika Pallikal	squash

Names of personalities	Sports / Games
Bula Choudhury	swimming
P.T. Usha	athletics
Saba Anjum Karim	hockey
Akanksha Singh	basketball
Mithali Raj	cricket
Sharmila Nicollet	golf
Deepika Kumari	archery

## SUMMARY

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbreakable'. She is a woman boxer from India, winner of five World Boxing Championship. She won an Olympic Bronze Medal in 2012. In this excerpt she explains the financial difficulties she had in the beginning to take up Boxing as her profession.

This lesson begins with her selection to the World Women's Boxing Championship in Pennsylvania, USA. Her father was not rich enough to send her to USA on his own but he managed to collect Rs. 2000. Then with the help of some of her friends and two MPs she traveled to Pennsylvania. Though she wanted to go around the country she could not do so. She had to go straight to the sporting arena from the airport. She had enough rest to face her first opponent and she easily won the match. She got her confidence that she could win any boxer. She reached the finals but lost it.

She realised that her greatest disadvantage was her loss of appetite. It was difficult for her to eat the food there. Probably this was the reason for her loss in the finals. Though she lost the gold the coaches appreciated her for the silver. The whole country was happy about that. When she returned to Delhi, she was given a grand reception. She had a felicitation ceremony in Lamgol. In the course of her career, she travelled to many countries. She tried to follow the custom of those countries.

She received some prize money for the silver medal from the government. With that money she managed her immediate financial problem. She needed a job to find a permanent solution for her finance. After her second World Championship gold the Manipuri government offered her the post of sub-inspector. She was happy to receive the government job.

Even after her marriage she added medals to her collection. When she won the Third World Women's Boxing Championship she was given a hero's welcome at Imphal airport. Between 2001 and 2004 she won many medals. She considered her fourth world title win in New Delhi as one of the greatest moments. With the hat-trick of World Championship wins the media named her 'Magnificent Mary' and 'Queen of Boxing'.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 38

princely	–	very large
jet lag	–	a tired and unpleasant feeling, a person experiences, following a long flight through different time zones
appetite	–	hunger
lauded	–	appreciated
conviction	–	firm faith or belief
sate	–	satisfy
palate	–	sense of taste
felicitation	–	congratulatory address
adulation	–	appreciation
etched	–	imprinted
haul	–	taking a collection
speculation	–	guess

## MEANINGS

autobiography	a book in which someone writes about his/her own life	pursuit	chase
excerpt	extract	category	group
upset	sad, distressed	expensive	costly
seek	try for	donated	gave, contributed
princely	very large	sum	amount
relieved	calmed, pleased	behalf	instead of someone
confined	restricted	enormously	big way
compulsory	necessary	jet lag	a tired and unpleasant feeling a person experiences after a long flight
vanished	disappeared	event	happening
appetite	hunger	accustomed	familiar
probably	likely	consoled	comforted
lauded	appreciated	conviction	belief
take on	compete with	chopsticks	the two sticks Chinese use (like spoon) to eat their food
sate	satisfy	palate	sense of taste
felicitation	congratulatory address	adulation	appreciation
traditional	customary	etched	imprinted
vowed	promised	offered	gave
obtained	got, received	required	compulsory
tend	to be likely to do	haul	collection
speculation	assumption	retained	continue to possess
grand	outstanding	performed	carried out
exceptionally	remarkably		

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. With this **princely** sum and a little more that had been collected from people, I left for the US.  
a) kingly                      b) large                      c) enough                      d) prince's
2. The greatest disadvantage for me was my loss of **appetite**.  
a) faith                      b) belief                      c) hunger                      d) anger
3. But the coaches were kind; they consoled me and **lauded** me on the silver win.  
a) teased                      b) laughed at                      c) told                      d) appreciated
4. But the biggest thing I took this championship was the **conviction** that I could take on any boxer.  
a) belief                      b) commitment                      c) game                      d) trouble
5. I ate enough to **sate** my appetite and my palate.  
a) create                      b) kindle                      c) satisfy                      d) taste
6. Thanks giving prayers were said and words of praise and **adulation** were showered on me.  
a) appreciation                      b) wishes                      c) commitment                      d) calculation
7. The fight and all that followed are clearly **etched** in my memory.  
a) forgotten                      b) erased                      c) imprinted                      d) washed
8. It put an end to **speculation** among my family and friends around that particular topic.  
a) assumption                      b) rejection                      c) botheration                      d) occupation
9. My medal **haul** continued after my marriage.  
a) heavy                      b) collection                      c) spread                      d) light
10. I was selected in the 48kg **category** for the International Boxing Association.  
a) custom                      b) group                      c) sports                      d) games
11. I was both upset and worried because I'd heard of how **expensive** things were in America.  
a) cheap                      b) good                      c) deep                      d) costly
12. With this princely **sum** and a little more that had been collected from people, I left for the US.  
a) some                      b) calculation                      c) money                      d) desire
13. We were **confined** to the sports arena.  
a) open                      b) ready                      c) playing                      d) restricted
14. My fear of facing new opponents quickly **vanished**.  
a) appeared                      b) disappeared                      c) joined                      d) coined
15. I was not **accustomed** to the food there.  
a) familiar                      b) happy                      c) ready                      d) sad

#### Answers

1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. c	6. a	7. c	8. a	9. b	10. b
11. d	12. c	13. d	14. b	15. a					

## SELF EVALUATION

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. I was both **upset** and worried because I'd heard of how expensive things were in America.  
a) sad                      b) happy                      c) anxious                      d) satisfied
2. I was **relieved** to have money in my pocket.  
a) pleased                      b) away                      c) ready                      d) rich
3. The people were **enormously** nice too.  
a) small way                      b) large way                      c) simple way                      d) quick way
4. The other team had already completed their weight in, which is **compulsory** for all players.  
a) common                      b) good                      c) necessary                      d) possible
5. I felt like this would be the place, the **event** that would change my life.  
a) trial                      b) writing                      c) speaking                      d) happening
6. This is **probably** what cost me my dream.  
a) truly                      b) likely                      c) wonderfully                      d) happily
7. But the coaches were kind; they **consoled** me and lauded me on the silver win.  
a) greeted                      b) called                      c) comforted                      d) tried
8. But the biggest thing I took away from this championship was the conviction that I could **take on** any boxer.  
a) carry out                      b) carry out                      c) called for                      d) compete with
9. I was presented a **traditional** shawl.  
a) costly                      b) cheap                      c) customary                      d) large
10. I **vowed** that the next time I would bring back a gold.  
a) thought                      b) knew                      c) doubted                      d) promised
11. The Manipur Government **offered** me the post of sub-inspector.  
a) rejected                      b) gave                      c) withdrew                      d) showed
12. The jobs that are **obtained** through the sports quota is that we are not required to go on to work regularly.  
a) received                      b) lost                      c) observed                      d) broken
13. The jobs that are obtained through the sports quota is that we are not **required** to go on to work regularly.  
a) unnecessary                      b) impossible                      c) immediate                      d) compulsory
14. We **tend** to be away at camps and tournaments through much of the year.  
a) attend                      b) receive                      c) reject                      d) likely
15. I **retained** the world title in the Third Women's Boxing Championship.  
a) rejected                      b) lost                      c) kept                      d) tried

**OPPOSITES**

selected	×	rejected	amateur	×	professional
expensive	×	cheap	princely	×	small
confined	×	opened	arrive	×	depart
compulsory	×	optional	fortunate	×	unfortunate
lucky	×	unlucky	comfortably	×	uncomfortably
vanished	×	appeared	lost	×	won
disadvantage	×	advantage	consoled	×	agitated
lauded	×	blamed	conviction	×	scepticism
victory	×	defeat	adulation	×	criticism
etched	×	forgotten	immediate	×	gradual
security	×	insecurity	steady	×	unreliable, unsteady
offered	×	withdrawn	retained	×	lost
grand	×	simple	several	×	few

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

**1. Antonym**

Now, find and write the antonyms for the words in Box A from the set of words in Box B.

A	B			Answer
amateur	professional	leader	eccentric	<b>professional</b>
compulsory	respective	elusive	cheap	<b>optional</b>
traditional	unnecessary	supportive	ancillary	<b>modern</b>
expensive	hateful	desperate	trivial	<b>cheap</b>
hopeful	modern	fanciful	repulsive	<b>desperate</b>
accepted	fulfilled	refused	showered	<b>refused</b>
	invaluable	novice	optional	
	complex	antique	determined	

**ADDITIONAL EXERCISES**

**EXERCISE WITH ANSWER**

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

- \_\_\_\_\_ International Boxing Association (originally the Association Internationale de Boxe Amateur, or AIBA).  
 a) professional      b) unskilled      c) inexpert      d) original
- We were confined to the sports arena.  
 a) restricted      b) sent      c) open      d) limited

3. **My fear of facing new opponents quickly vanished.**  
 a) appeared      b) unknown      c) disappeared      d) known
4. **But the coaches were kind; they consoled me and lauded me on the silver win.**  
 a) praised      b) blamed      c) added      d) removed
5. **Words of praise and adulation were showered on me.**  
 a) reverence      b) admire      c) irresponsibility      d) criticism
6. **The fight and all that followed are clearly etched in my memory.**  
 a) forgotten      b) kept      c) uncontrolled      d) remembered
7. **I retained the world title in the Third World Women's Boxing Championship.**  
 a) missed      b) kept      c) involved      d) underwent
8. **I was selected in the 48 kg category for the International Boxing Association.**  
 a) accepted      b) included      c) rejected      d) informed
9. **I'd heard of how expensive things were in America.**  
 a) costly      b) inaccurate      c) informative      d) cheap
10. **With this princely sum and a little more that had been collected from people I left for the US.**  
 a) huge      b) small      c) kingly      d) mansion

Answers									
1. a	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. d	6. a	7. a	8. c	9. d	10. b

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. **We were the last team to arrive.**  
 a) depart      b) reach      c) attain      d) lost
2. **The other teams had already completed their weight in, which is compulsory for all players.**  
 a) unimportant      b) unknown      c) believable      d) optional
3. **I was fortunate but some of the team members were not lucky.**  
 a) blessed      b) unfortunate      c) infortunate      d) unbelievable
4. **While my team mates lost one by one after the other I went on to reach the finals.**  
 a) won      b) failed      c) came      d) went
5. **But the coaches were kind; they consoled me and lauded me on the silver win.**  
 a) praised      b) cursed      c) wanted      d) agitated
6. **The biggest thing I took away from this championship was the conviction that I could take on any boxer.**  
 a) belief      b) misunderstanding      c) unbelief      d) complication
7. **There was a victory ride across town, a felicitation programme was held in Lomgol.**  
 a) conquest      b) defeat      c) pride      d) invalid

8. The prize money from the government had put an end to my **immediate** financial worries.  
 a) sudden                      b) slow                      c) later                      d) few
9. I wanted a job too, for that alone can bring long term security and a **steady** income.  
 a) immediate                      b) later                      c) unreliable                      d) realistic
10. The Manipur Government **offered** me the post of Sub-Inspector.  
 a) without                      b) withdrew                      c) surrendered                      d) added

2. Based on your reading of the text answer the following questions in two or three sentences each.

a) **How did Mary Kom manage to get financial support for her trip to the USA?**

Her father collected Rs. 2000. Two MPs donated Rs. 5000 and Rs. 3000 respectively. Thus she got financial support for her trip to the USA.

b) **Why did Mary Kom think that she should not return empty handed?**

She received Rs. 10000 from others to make her trip to USA to participate in World Women's Boxing Championship. So she thought that she should not return empty handed after the efforts taken for her trip to USA.

c) **What was her first impression of America?**

America was pleasing to her eye and the people were enormously nice to her.

d) **Why did she call herself 'lucky'?**

The Indian team was the last to arrive in Pennsylvania. They had to go straight to the sporting arena. She found that she did not have any match on that day. So she was lucky to take some rest.

e) **According to Mary Kom what was the reason for her losing in the finals?**

She was not used to the American food. So she could not eat well and she lost her weight. She thought that it was the reason for her loss.

f) **What made her feel confident about the competitive players? Explain.**

She realised that the boxers were not unbeatable. Though she lost her finals in the USA, the matches gave her confidence that she could oppose any competitive players.

g) **What difficulty did she experience while eating Chinese food?**

She found it difficult to use the chopsticks to eat Chinese food.

h) **How was she felicitated on her return to India?**

She was greeted with garlands, drumbeats and dancing. There was a victory ride across the town. A felicitation programme was held in Langol. There was a thanks-giving prayer and people showered words of praises on her.

i) **What did she consider her greatest achievement? Why?**

She retained her world title in 2006 in New Delhi. This she considered her greatest achievement because she did it in India, in front of her own people.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

a. **For which championship was Mary Kom selected in 2001?**

Mary Kom was selected in the 48 kg category for World Women's Boxing Championship in Pennsylvania, USA, in 2001.

b. **How did Mary Kom fare in the World Women's Championship in 2001?**

Though her team mates lost one after the other, she reached the finals. She defeated Nadia Hokmi of Poland by RBC and in the semifinal she defeated Jamie Behal of Canada. In the finals she lost to Hula Sahin of Turkey and she had to come back with a silver.

**c. What was the reaction of the coaches when Mary Kom lost in the finals in 2001?**

Mary Kom was very disappointed when she lost in the finals. But her coaches were very kind and they not only consoled her but also appreciated her for her silver medal.

**d. How did Mary Kom try to get used to the culture of other countries?**

Mary Kom tried to adapt to the customs of other countries. In China she tried to eat with chopsticks. In the same way she learnt to use knife and fork.

**e. Name some of the Championships won by Mary Kom.**

Mary Kom won the following Championship:

- the 2nd Women's Boxing Championship
- the 2nd Asian Women's Boxing Championship
- Witch Cup Boxing Championship
- 3rd and 4th Women's Boxing Championship

Page: 39

**3. Answer the following in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words each.****a) Describe Mary Kom's personal experiences during her first international Championship match from the time of selection to winning the medal.**

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbreakable'. Here she describes her experiences when she got selected for World Women's Boxing Championship. After her performance in Bangkok Championship she was selected for the International Boxing Association World Women's Boxing Championship in Pennsylvania, USA in November – December 2001. She had financial difficulties to take up her trip to the USA. Her father could collect only Rs.2000 and she got donations from two MPs – Rs.5000 and Rs.3000. Thus she went to the USA with Rs.10000. She stayed in the sports arena because it was cold and snowing outside. Since she did not have match on the first day she could take rest. She reached the finals and thought she could win the gold. But she lost the finals to Hula Sahin of Turkey. She was not used to the food of that place so she could not eat well and lost weight. That must have been the reason for her loss.

**b) Lack of adequate financial resources and sponsorship often affect sportspersons. How is this evident from Mary Kom's life?**

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbreakable'. Here she describes her experiences when she got selected for World Women's Boxing Championship. After her performance in Bangkok Championship she was selected for the International Boxing Association World Women's Boxing Championship in Pennsylvania, USA. She had financial difficulties to take up her trip to the USA. All sportspersons are not rich enough to go to different countries to participate in matches. They need financial support from others. Some games have sponsorship from big companies. But Boxing is not that much supported in India. Her father could collect only Rs. 2000 and she got donations from two MPs – Rs.5000 and Rs.3000. Thus she went to the USA with Rs.10000. If she had not got the money from the MPs she would not have participated in the Championship matches and India would have lost a successful boxer.

**c) Why was Mary Kom named the 'Queen of Boxing' and 'Magnificent Mary'?**

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbeatable'. She received silver medal from World Women's Boxing Championship in 2001. She was greeted well in India. From 2001 to 2004 she won several golds in Senior Women's Boxing Championships. Even after her marriage she participated in matches and won medals. She won gold in the Third and Fourth World Women's Boxing Championship in 2005 and 2006. The fourth championship was held in Delhi and that victory was the greatest for her because she won gold in front of her own people. The other boxers also did well in the championship. That was the hat-trick World Championship win for India. So the media named her 'Queen of Boxing, and 'Magnificent Mary'.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS**

Answer the following in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words each.

**1. Describe the life and achievement of Mary Kom.**

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbreakable'. She is a woman boxer from India and the winner of five World Boxing Championship. Her father was not rich enough to send her to USA on his own but he managed to collect Rs. 2000. Then with the help of some of her friends and two MPs she traveled to Pennsylvania. She had to go straight to the sporting arena from the airport. She realised that her greatest disadvantage was her loss of appetite. Though she lost the gold the coaches appreciated her for the silver. The whole country was happy about that. When she returned to Delhi she was given a grand reception. She received some prize money for the silver medal from the government. After her second World Championship gold the Manipuri government offered her the post of sub-inspector. She was happy to receive the government job. When she won the Third World Women's Boxing Championship she was given a hero's welcome at Imphal airport. Between 2001 and 2004 she won many medals. She considered her fourth world title win in New Delhi as one of the greatest moments. With this win the media named her 'Queen of Boxing'.

**2. How did Mary Kom fare in World Women Championship in Pennsylvania, USA?**

'The Queen of Boxing' is an excerpt from Mary Kom's autobiography 'Unbreakable'. This lesson begins with her selection to the World Women's Boxing Championship in Pennsylvania, USA. Her father was not rich enough to send her to USA on his own but he managed to collect Rs. 2000. Then with the help of some of her friends and two MPs she traveled to Pennsylvania. Though she wanted to go around the country she could not do so. She had to go straight to the sporting arena from the airport. She had enough rest to face her first opponent and she easily won the match. She got her confidence to feel that she could win any boxer. She reached the finals but lost the finals. She realised that her greatest disadvantage was her loss of appetite. It was difficult for her to eat the food there. Probably this was the reason for her loss in the finals. Though she lost the gold the coaches appreciated her for the silver. The whole country was happy about that when she returned to Delhi she was given a grand reception. She had a felicitation ceremony in Lamgol

**VOCABULARY**

**A. Abbreviations.**

Write the expanded forms of the following abbreviations and commonly come across in our daily life.

1.	IELTS	International English Language Testing System
2.	GST	Goods and Service Tax
3.	TNPSC	Tamil Nadu Public Service Commission
4.	STD	Subscriber's Trunk Dialing
5.	ISD	International Subscriber Dialing
6.	MBA	Master of Business Administration
7.	MHRD	Ministry of Human Resource Development
8.	GPS	Global Positioning System
9.	NSS	National Service Scheme

10.	PTA	Parents Teachers Association
11.	NGO	Non Governmental Organization
12.	ICU	Intensive Care Unit
13.	IIM	Indian Institute of Management
14.	MRI	Magnetic Resonance Imaging
15.	ECG	Electro Cardio Gram
16.	NCC	National Cadet Corps
17.	LED	Light Emitting Diode
18.	CPU	Central Processing Unit
19.	CBSE	Central Board of Secondary Education
20.	GDP	Gross Domestic Product
21.	LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
22.	NRI	Non Resident Indian
23.	IIT	Indian Institute of Technology
24.	ITI	Industrial Training Institute
25.	USB	Universal Serial Bus

### B. Prefix

Form the opposites of the words given below by prefixing 'un', 'in', 'dis', 'ir', 'il' appropriately.

fortunate	<b>un</b> fortunate
respect	<b>dis</b> respect
rational	<b>irr</b> ational
direct	<b>ind</b> irect
comfortable	<b>un</b> comfortable
regular	<b>ir</b> regular
active	<b>in</b> active
agree	<b>dis</b> agree

obedient	<b>dis</b> obedient
continue	<b>dis</b> continue
decent	<b>in</b> decent
legitimate	<b>il</b> legitimate
aware	<b>un</b> aware
finite	<b>in</b> finite
necessary	<b>un</b> necessary
relevant	<b>ir</b> relevant

### C. Idioms related to sports: Idioms and meanings

Page: 40

- i) throw in the towel – state of near collapse or defeat
- ii) in our corner – on your side in an argument or dispute
- iii) on the ropes – to give up
- iv) below the belt – unfair and unsporting behaviour
- v) square off – prepare for a conflict

### LISTENING ACTIVITY

Read the questions based on the running commentary of a cricket match. Then listen to the running commentary of a cricket match read out by your teacher or played on the recorder and tick the right answer.

- i) Who faced the first ball in the 49th over?
  - a) Kulasekara
  - b) Yuvraj
  - c) Dhoni
  - d) Sachin

- ii) Which batsman hit a sixer?  
 a) Kulasekara      b) Bajji      c) Dhoni      d) Yuvraj
- iii) Where was the match held?  
 a) Chennai      b) Delhi      c) Calcutta      d) Mumbai
- iv) Who were popularly called The Finishers?  
 a) Dhoni and Yuvaraj      b) Bajji and Malinga  
 c) Gambhir and Yuvaraj      d) Perara and Malinga
- v) How many runs did India need to win the match in the last four overs?  
 a) 21      b) 27      c) 30      d) 37

**SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

Page: 41

In groups of five, discuss the following topic taking examples from Mary Kom's life.

Athletes cannot run with money in their pockets. They must run with hope in their heart and dreams in their head.

The following expressions may help you in connecting ideas and presenting your views to the class.

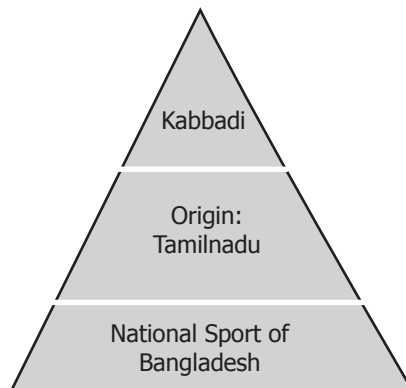
- ✓ In my opinion...
- ✓ I whole-heartedly support...
- ✓ At the outset, let me say...
- ✓ I should like to draw your attention to...

At the outset, let me say that money matters to some extent. Without money, engaging a coach, undergoing training and arranging for trip to venues will be impossible. But I would like to draw your attention to the fact that athletes can't run with money in their pockets. It is total dedication and commitment that will bring laurels. In my opinion, those who run with hope in their heart and dreams in their head alone will outshine and create spectacular records in the sporting arena. Now-a-days, there are a number of sponsors who readily adopt promising sports persons. So, money is secondary. But guts and grits is what matters most. I whole-heartedly support the view that aspiration and perspiration will win golds.

**READING**

Given below is the visual presentation of the first paragraph.

Page: 42





**4. Kabbadi is called by different names in different parts of India. Do you know how Pallankuzhi is called in Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Kerala?**

Ali guli mane in Karnataka

Vamana Kuntalu in Andhra Pradesh

Kuzhipara in Kerala

## GRAMMAR

### Modal Auxiliaries

Modal auxiliaries are also called helping verbs. They indicate modalities, attitudes or feelings like ability, possibility, permission, obligation, compulsion etc.

Modal Verbs			
can	Ability, Request	could	Past ability, Possibility
may	Permission or Future Possibility	might	Future Possibility
must	Necessity or Obligation	ought to	What's right and correct
shall	Offer or Suggestion	should	Advice or Suggestion
will	Willingness, Certainty, Promise	would	Request, Invitation
need	Necessity	dare	Courage and boldness
used to	Past habit		

#### A. Fill in the blanks with suitable modal verbs.

Page: 43

- We are not completely sure but Kishore \_\_\_\_\_ come back tomorrow.
- When Koushik was a child, he \_\_\_\_\_ play in the street.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I have some more juice, please?
- We \_\_\_\_\_ not paint this room now.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ rather request you to check my exercise before giving it to the teacher.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I use your mobile phone? It's an emergency.
- In schools, students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniforms. It is compulsory.
- The voyagers did not \_\_\_\_\_ to drop anchor at the unknown island.
- Thou \_\_\_\_\_ love your neighbour.
- The Manager \_\_\_\_\_ not excuse you, if you fail to complete your assignment today.
- Helen jotted down the important points lest she \_\_\_\_\_ forget it.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ never retain me against my wishes.
- Being a Monday, the shops \_\_\_\_\_ not be crowded today.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ admit my fault, if I were you.
- The groom \_\_\_\_\_ certainly be over 30 years of age.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ go abroad to pursue his higher studies next year.
- It's not that urgent. You \_\_\_\_\_ take your own time.
- There is a lot of time left, so you \_\_\_\_\_ not panic.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I turn on the fan, please?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ not believe my eyes. Is Santhosh the one who is standing over there?
- Dinesh \_\_\_\_\_ be the richest person in the village. He has just bought two luxury cars.
- Nirmala \_\_\_\_\_ write perfectly when she was seven.

Answers						
1. may	2. used to	3. can	4. should	5. would	6. can	7. must
8. dare	9. shall	10. will	11. should	12. can	13. may	14. would
15. must	16. will	17. can	18. need	19. could	20. can	21. must
22. used to						

**B. Practice your modal verbs. Look at these signs and write down the rules, regulations or advice they convey using the modal verbs given below.**

Chemical goggles may disturb you. Be careful.

Materials may fall down from the top. So you should be careful.

This place may not be safe. Don't loiter in this area.

The floor may be slippery. Be careful.

You should buckle up for safety.

You can get information about 'right to know' in this office.

You should use this way if fire breaks out.

You should not enter here. This is only for authorised people.

This is a private property. So others should not trespass.

You can save energy by closing the door when it is not in use.

This should be used only for exit.

Your safety is important. So you must bend down while lifting the weights.

**C. Read the following passage adapted from 'Three Men in a Boat' and fill in the blanks with appropriate modals and read the paragraph aloud.**

I thought I will go to British Museum today to read the treatment for some slight ailment of which I had a touch. I (1) could read all I wanted to read and then felt I (2) should begin to study diseases. I started to generally turn the leaves idly. I came to typhoid fever, read the symptoms and discovered I (3) must be having it for months without knowing it. Cholera, I had severe complications, Diphtheria, I (4) must have been born with. I was relieved to find that Bright's disease, I had only in a modified form as so far as that was concerned, I (5) could live for years. The only disease I (6) could conclude I had not got was a housemaid's knee. I sat and pondered. I tried to feel my heart. I (7) could not feel my heart. I walked into the reading room as a happy healthy man but crawled out as a decrepit wreck.

**Prepositions**

A preposition is a word used to link nouns, pronouns or phrases to other words within a sentence. Prepositions are usually short words and they are placed before the nouns.

**A) Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate preposition.**

Page: 45

- In case of difficulty, you should refer to a dictionary and then respond to the question.
- The clothes that he has put on are very impressive. He is going to his hometown to pay homage to the village head.
- The nearest hospital to this place is at a distance of twenty kilometers. You can reach it either by car or in a bicycle.

**B) Complete the following paragraph by filling in the blanks with suitable prepositions and read the paragraph aloud for better understanding of the use of prepositions.**

Mr. Beek of New Jersey has invented a floating life-preserver, which gives complete protection (1) to people who have been shipwrecked. The upper section is large enough (2) for the wearer to be able to move his head and arms (3) on, and a month's supply (4) of food and drinking water can also be stored (5) in it. The cover can be closed in rough weather, and the wearer can see (6) through the window in the front, and breathe (7) with a curved pipe. The life preserver is made (8) of water proof cloth attached (9) to circular metal tubes, which protect the wearer (10) from sharp rocks and hungry fish.

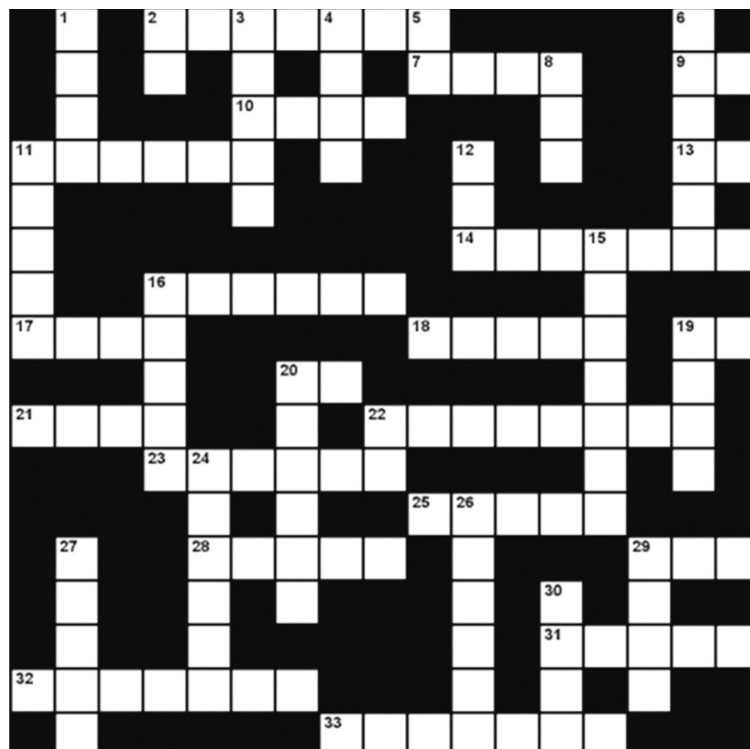
**C) Fill in the blanks in the following sentences, using prepositions if necessary.**

- i) The new machines are quite different from the old ones. They are able to work at a much faster pace, a substantially reduced risk to the environment.
- ii) The students discussed the problem among themselves. However they did not arrive at any conclusion. They went to their class teacher and discussed with her. She gave a solution to it and they were happy.

**D) Do you know what happened to the Titanic, the largest ship to sail then? She hit an iceberg and sank into the Atlantic Ocean. Now choose the right word and complete the paragraph. Read the paragraph aloud.**

The wreck (1) of (up/of) the RMS Titanic lies (2) at (in/at) the depth of (3) about (about/above) 12,500 feet about 370 miles south east (4) off (of/off) the coast of Newfoundland. It lies (5) in (in/on) two main pieces about a third (6) of (of/off) a mile apart. The bow is still largely recognizable (7) with (with/within) many preserved interiors despite the damage it sustained hitting the sea floor. A debris field (8) for (of/for) the wreck contains thousands (9) of (on/of) items spilled (10) from (from/of) the ship as it sank. She sank (11) in (in/at) the year 1912.

**E) Solve the crossword using the clues given.**



Across		Down	
2	We fought <b>against</b> the measures. (7)	1	I put the book <b>upon</b> the table. (4)
7	The cat jumped <b>onto</b> the table. (4)	2	Please treat me <b>as</b> equals. (2)
9	The cat climbed <b>up</b> the tree. (2)	3	Dessert will be served <b>after</b> dinner. (5)
10	My story is shorter <b>than</b> yours. (4)	4	My house is <b>near</b> the school. (4)
11	Cats are <b>unlike</b> the dogs. (6)	5	We walked <b>to</b> the store. (2)
13	Put the cookie <b>in</b> the jar. (2)	6	No eating <b>during</b> class. (6)
14	Let's walk <b>through</b> the park. (7)	8	The book fell <b>off</b> my desk. (3)
16	The vegetables were planted <b>beside</b> the apple tree. (6)	11	I will not leave <b>until</b> the speech is finished. (5)
17	Banu sings <b>like</b> a bird. (4)	12	The store is open every day <b>but</b> Sunday.(3)
18	My story is <b>about</b> my pets. (5)	15	The dog is <b>outside</b> the house. (7)
19	Subash is the President <b>of</b> our class. (2)	16	The cat is hiding <b>beside</b> my bed. (5)
20	We live <b>by</b> the river. (2)	19	The cat jumped <b>over</b> the dog. (4)
21	Let's walk <b>into</b> class together. (4)	20	He is hiding <b>behind</b> the bookcase. (6)
22	The bank is <b>opposite</b> the park. (8)	22	Dinner is <b>on</b> the table. (2)
23	We live <b>within</b> the city limits. (6)	24	I put my hands <b>inside</b> my pockets. (6)
25	I saw John waving <b>above</b> the crowd. (5)	26	We will eat <b>before</b> the play. (6)
28	I am more cautious <b>from</b> the fall. (5)	27	The cat is sleeping <b>under</b> the bed. (5)
29	I have a present <b>for</b> you. (3)	29	This letter is <b>from</b> my aunt. (4)
31	We strolled <b>along</b> the river. (5)	30	We ran <b>with</b> the other kids. (4)
32	He ran <b>towards</b> us. (7)		
33	The leaves had collected <b>beneath</b> the trees. (7)		

**WRITING**

Page: 50

**TASK**

**On the basis of your understanding of the given sample, make notes of the following text and write a summary in about 75 words.**

Looking at the modern children, one striking difference between the childhood that the previous generation had and the one that this generation has is the lack of Indian or native games. In the 1970's, people used to play a variety of indoor and outdoor games that were the games of this soil. Nowadays almost all Children play games like cricket, tennis and football. Nobody is playing games like Kabaddi, Goli, Ghilli or Indoor games like the Dhaayakattam, Paramapadham, Pallanguzhi, Paandi or Aadupuliaattam. These games have a rich culture and heritage value and were tools of passing on some ancestral knowledge or the other. They also sharpened our observational and math skills unlike the hit and run games of the west that are uni-dimensional and strengthen only hand-eye coordination.

Traditional Games were not just games, they were designed in such a way that one can develop lot of skills like logical thinking, building strategy, concentration, basic mathematics, aiming, and a lot more. Nowadays we develop these skills by paying money to centres that conduct personal development courses. Traditional Games act as learning aids. They teach us many things while playing, like to learn to win and lose,

develop sensory skills, count, add, improve motor skills, identify colour, improve hand-eye co-ordination and finally to have fun, either by playing the game or watching a game being played.

The values that we achieve by playing these games are more when compared to the games that we play nowadays. Some of the values that we gain are that they are environment friendly, we get a chance to learn about our culture and history, and an important thing is, it is suitable for all ages, so they increase the interaction between generations. Many modern games played around the world have their origin in these traditional games which is a pride to our country's culture.

### Note Making

1. Difference between past and present childhood games
  - a. games of soil
  - b. rich culture and heritage
2. Traditional games' importance
  - a. develop skills and logical thinking
  - b. now pay and receive these skills
  - c. learn to win and lose
3. Values of the traditional games
  - a. environmental friendly
  - b. learn our culture and history
  - c. pride to our culture

### Summary

#### Difference between past and present childhood games

There is a difference between the games played by the children of the past generation and the present generation. In the past, children played native games like Kabbadi, Goli and Gilly. But now most of the children play games like cricket, tennis and football. In the past they played indoor games like dhaayakattam, pallanguzhi etc. Children get cultural and heritage values from our old games. The traditional games develop lot of skills and logical thinking, sensory skills, motor skills and hand-eye coordination. The traditional games give values more than the modern games. Our old games are environmental friendly and we learn our culture and history from them. The traditional games are our pride to our country's culture.

- C. Debate is an essential skill and your class room is the best place to practice this skill. Your teacher will now divide the class into two groups and organize a debate on the topic "Fast food tastes better than nutritious food". The following points may help you to participate and speak in a debate. One group will speak FOR the motion and the other group will speak AGAINST the motions. Now prepare a speech for the debate.**

#### "Fast food tastes better than nutritious food"

##### FOR THE TOPIC :

Fast food tastes better than nutritious food because of spices. The aroma of fast food is alluring. As it is served hot, it tastes better than nutritious food. Office - going people have little time and can't wait for food from home. So they grab fast food on the way or near the office. Their hunger is immediately satisfied. Hence it tastes better.

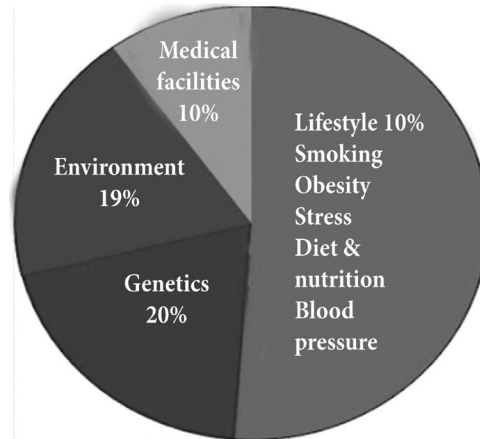
##### Against the Topic :

Nutritious food tastes better than fast food. Because it has natural ingredients that make it more delicious. Moreover, it improves our well - being. It may reduce the risk of heart disease, obesity and type 2 diabetes. It does not make any side - effects unlike fast food. Moreover traditional spices create the flavour that adds to pleasant taste.

### Pie-Chart TASK

Page: 52

Read and understand the data presented in the pie-chart below on factors affecting health, and write an article for your school magazine highlighting the fact that it's our lifestyle that determines how healthy we remain. Write your article in about 150 words. Give a suitable title too.



The chart gives the factors that affect health. As per the chart the life style of the people contributes a lot to the health problems of the people. Smoking affects the health. Obesity and stress will also do their part in affecting the health. Another big problem is Diet and Nutrition. These days people do not eat the right food. They are taken by the taste and they do not get healthy food. The fast food is a curse to our health. The blood pressure is another problem now. Many people suffer from high or low blood pressure due to wrong food and lack of exercise. Genetics also plays a vital role in health. Our environment is also not healthy for people to live in. Another one is the medical facilities given by our government.

\*\*◆◆\*\*

## UNIT

## 2

# CONFESSIONS OF A BORN SPECTATOR

*Frederic Ogden Nash*

## POEM

### About the Author

Author	: Frederic Ogden Nash
Born	: 19th August, 1902 - Newyork.
Education	: St. George's School New Port County, Harvard University.
Speciality	: Unconventional rhyme scheme - humour.
Career	: • Teacher • Bonds salesman • Writer • Editor
Literary Achievement	: best of his work published in 14 volumes - over 500 poems
Died	: 19th May, 1971.



### Warm Up

Page: 53

List out the activities in which you like to be either a performer or a spectator. Share your views with the class.

Activities		
	performer / player	spectator / audience
e.g.	cricket	magician
a.	Chess	Football
b.	Badminton	Archery
c.	Volleyball	Fencing
d.	Kabbadi	Wrestling

### SUMMARY

Ogden Nash was an American poet well known for his light verse. With his unconventional rhyming schemes, he was declared the country's best-known producer of humorous poetry. In this poem Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or decide to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet accepts that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. Children have different goals in life and wish to play various games. Each child has in mind something in particular, but the narrator is happy that he is not one of the players. The narrator admires the talents of all athletes and derives satisfaction from watching them, but does not wish to get their place. He also sometimes regrets that zealous athletes play rough games without caring for the feelings of their sporting rivals. He feels that good sense and caution win over ego. The narrator wholeheartedly offers thanks for his modest physique. Ultimately the narrator is satisfied for not being an athlete.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 54

jockey	–	horse rider
prize ring	–	enclosed area in which boxing matches are fought
tackle, center	–	playing positions in football
gaudy pomp	–	showy dress
maim	–	injure
romp	–	play in a rough and noisy way
limp	–	weak
bashful	–	shy and reluctant
lashes	–	beats with a whip
steed	–	a large, strong horse
swap	–	exchange
zealous	–	enthusiastic
prudence	–	wisdom
gnarled	–	rough and twisted
physique	–	body
drink to you	–	drink to wish good luck or celebrate success
gambol	–	run or jump happily

## MEANINGS

infant	small child	jockey	horse rider
prize ring	area for boxing	tackle	approach
glad	happy	admire	appreciate
sweat	work hard	gaudy pomp	colourful dress
maim	injure	romp	play in rough way
limp	weak	bashful	shy
heroic	daring, courageous	deeds	actions
cracking	breaking	lash	beat
steed	horse	swap	exchange
zealous	enthusiastic	'twixt	between
prudence	wisdom	swollen	enlarged
gnarled	rough and twisted	snaps	breaks
officialdom	bureaucracy	physique	body
gambol	jump happily		

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

Page: 54

1. Based on your understanding of the poem, answer the following questions in a sentence or two.

a. Why does the poet feel glad that he does not play any game?

The poet feels glad that he need not suffer like other athletes. He need not satisfy his ego.

**b. Do you think the narrator is heroic? Why?**

The narrator is not heroic because he never wants to be an athlete. He does not want to take any risk.

**c. The poet is satisfied just watching the heroic deeds of others. What could be the reason?**

The poet does not want to get hurt. His prudence does not allow his ego to come up to do some heroic deeds. So he is satisfied at watching the heroic deeds of others.

**d. The poet does not wish to exchange the position with the runners. Why?**

The poet does not wish to exchange the position with the runners because they attack each other to win the race.

**e. Are the athletes conscious of the feelings of others? Why do you say so?**

The athletes are not conscious of the feeling of others. The enthusiastic athletes play roughly without considering others' feelings.

**f. Why would the referee ask whether there was a doctor in the stands? What stands is he referring to here?**

In some games like boxing one player may break the knee or cracks the wrist of the other so the referee would ask some help from a doctor to give first aid. The gallery where the spectators are sitting is referred to as stands.

**g. Why does the poet prefer to buy tickets worth their weight in radium? Bring out the significance of the metal referred to here.**

Though the poet does not want to play, he appreciates the players. So he buys tickets of high denominations. The metal referred here is to mean the high value.

**2. Read the poem again and complete the summary using the words given in the box.**

In the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator,' Ogden Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or decide to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet (i) confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. Children have different (ii) aims and wish to play various games. Each child has in mind something in particular, but the narrator is (iii) glad that he is not one of the players. Though the narrator (iv) admires the talents of all athletes, he derives satisfaction from watching them, but does not wish to (v) exchange places with them. He also sometimes regrets that (vi) zealous athletes play rough games without caring for the feelings of their sporting rivals. He feels that good sense and caution win over ego. The narrator wholeheartedly offers (vii) thanksgiving for the modest (viii) physiques of athletes. Ultimately the narrator is (ix) satisfied that he himself is not an athlete.

**3. Read the poem and answer the following in a short paragraph of 8 – 10 sentences each.****a. How does the poet establish the victory of common sense over ego?**

In the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator,' Ogden Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or decide to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. The success in an athlete meet may please the ego of the player. But the player plays the game without considering the feelings of the opponents. The zealous athlete plays rough game with an eye upon success. Sometimes he feels a struggle between his prudence and ego and he is happy his prudence wins over his ego. So he is happy to be a spectator.

- b. The poet does not wish to exchange places with the athletes. How does he justify his view?**

In the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator,' Ogden Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or decide to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. As a spectator he watches the rough games of the players. When a player runs to get his point the opponent will try to knock him down. He may fall to the ground and break his backbone. Then he will become invalid in this world. So he does not want to become an athlete.

- c. According to the poet what contributes most to the injuries sustained by the athletes?**

In the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator,' Ogden Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or decide to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. The players get injuries while playing. It mostly happens because they play rough and noisy game. When a player runs to get his point the opponent will try to knock him down. He may fall to the ground and break his backbone. They sweat for fun or hire. To show their prowess, they maim each other. Thus the athletes sustain injuries because they are zealous enough to play rough games.

**4. Read the given lines and answer the questions that follow in a sentence or two.**

- a. 'With all my heart I do admire**

*Athletes who sweat for fun or hire'*

- i. Whom does the poet admire?**

The poet admires the athletes.

- ii. For what reason do the athletes sweat?**

The athletes sweat or work hard to play well for fun or money.

- b. 'Well, ego it might be pleased enough**

*But zealous athletes play so rough..'*

- i. What pleases the ego?**

The success in a game pleases the ego.

- ii. Why are athletes often rough during play?**

The athletes have only success in their mind. They are often rough because they do not think about the feelings of the opponents.

- c. 'When officialdom demands**

*Is there a doctor in the stands?*

- i. Why are doctors called from stands by the sponsors?**

During a game the players may be badly wounded. So the sponsors call for the doctors.

- ii. Why does the poet make such an observation?**

The poet wants to prove that it is sometimes dangerous to participate in games.

- d. 'When snaps the knee and cracks the wrist...'**

**Identify and explain the use of the literary device in this line.**

Onomatopoeia.

The fact of words containing sounds similar to the noises they describe. The words, 'snaps' and 'cracks' refer to the sounds.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

1. *'One infant grows up and becomes jockey,  
Another plays basketball or hockey'*

a) **What does jockey refer to?**

The jockey refers to horse riding.

b) **Who is mentioned here as playing the games?**

The infant is mentioned here as playing the games.

c) **What are all the games referred to here?**

The games referred to here are horse riding, basketball and hockey.

2. *'I am just glad as glad can be  
That I am not them, that they are not me'*

a) **With whom is the poet's gladness compared?**

The poet's gladness is compared with gladness itself.

b) **Why does the poet mention he is not them?**

The poet is glad that he is not an athlete because he is of modest physique.

3. *'Who take the field in gaudy pomp,  
And maim each other as they romp'*

a) **How do the athletes enter the field?**

The athletes enter field in showy dress

b) **When do they get injured?**

They get injured when the opponents play a rough game.

c) **Where does the word 'maim' mean?**

The word 'maim' means injure.

4. *'Now A runs ninety yards to score  
B knocks the champion to the floor'*

a) **Which game is mentioned here?**

Football is mentioned here.

b) **Why does A run ninety yards?**

A runs ninety yards to score a goal.

c) **Who is B in this context?**

B is the opposite team or the rival player.

5. *'Athletes, I'll drink with you  
Or eat with you  
Or anything except compete with you'*

a) **What is the poet ready to do?**

The poet is ready is to drink or eat with the athletes.

b) **What is the poet not ready to do?**

The poet is not ready to compete with the athletes.

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

### 5. A. Explain the following with reference to the context in about 50-60 words each.

- i) *'I am just glad as glad can be  
That I am not them, that they are not me'.*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. The poet is very glad to say that he is not an athlete and he will never become one.

- ii) *'They do not ever in their dealings  
Consider one another's feelings'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. Most of the players play roughly. They do not consider the feelings of the opponents. They keep only success in their mind.

- iii) *'Athletes, I'll drink to you  
Or eat with you  
Or anything except compete with you'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet confesses that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. The poet is willing to drink for the good luck of the athletes and ready to celebrate their success. But he will never play with them.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

### Explain the following with reference to the context in about 50- 60 words each.

1. *'This one the prize ring hates to enter  
That one becomes a tackle or centre'*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. Children may choose one game or the other for their future. One may hate to enter the boxing ring. The child may become a centre of attraction in some other game.

2. *'My limp and bashful spirit feeds  
On other people's heroic deeds'.*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. He does not want to enter any playground to play the games. His spirit is very weak and shy so he refuses to take up any game. As he is weak and shy he enjoys the heroic deeds of other athletes rather than enjoying his heroic deeds.

3. *'You'd think my ego it would please  
To swap positions with one of these'*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. Most of the people take up their profession or hobby to satisfy their ego. Mostly ego pushes one to accept certain position in society. In the same way one may think that his ego would be pleased if he exchanges his position with an athlete. But he will not do that.

4. *'I'm glad that when my struggles begins  
Twixt prudence and ego, prudence wins'.*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. In life many times there will be a struggle between the prudence of person and his ego. Usually ego will win in that struggle. But in his case when such struggle comes only prudence will win. His prudence will not allow him to choose any sport for him to play. It will help him to be a good spectator.

5. *'My soul in true thanksgiving speaks  
For this modest of physiques'.*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. In a match most of the players play rough game. They do not consider the opponents' feeling. In the course of a game sometimes a player may get badly injured. Then the sponsor will call for the help of a doctor. When something happens like this he thanks God for his modest physical strength. Maybe if he has a better physique he may choose some game to play. So he thanks God for his modest physique.

6. *'Buy tickets worth their radium  
To watch you gambol in the stadium'.*

**Reference :**

This passage is taken from the poem 'Confession of a Born Spectator' written by Ogden Nash.

**Explanation :**

He says that he is not interested to take up any sport but he is interested to be a spectator. Though the poet is against playing some games, he never loses a chance to watch a good game. He buys high denomination tickets which are as costly as radium to watch a match. This shows that he is not against any game but against playing the game.

**B. Read the poem and complete the table with suitable rhyming words.**

(e.g.) enter	center
jockey	hockey
admire	hire
pomp	romp
feeds	deeds
score	floor

(e.g.) enter	center
please	these
fist	wrist
demands	stands
radium	stadium

**C. Underline the alliterated words in the following lines.**

Page: 56

- i) For this most modest physiques...  
 ii) They do not ever in their dealings...

**D. Find out the rhyme scheme of the given stanza.**

One infant grows up and becomes a jockey  
 Another plays basketball or hockey  
 This one the prize ring hates to enter  
 That one becomes a tackle or center...

a,a, b,b

**6. LISTENING ACTIVITY**

First, read the following statements. Then, listen to the passage read aloud by your teacher or played on the recorder and answer the questions that follow. You may listen to it again, if required.

**Choose the most appropriate option and complete the sentences.**

- Tejaswini Sawant is an Indian \_\_\_\_\_.**  
 a) shooter                      b) boxer                      c) cricketer                      **Ans: a**
- She represented India at the 9th South Asian Sports Federation Games in \_\_\_\_\_.**  
 a) 2001                      b) 2002                      c) 2004                      **Ans: c**
- In 2006, she won a Gold medal in the \_\_\_\_\_.**  
 a) Commonwealth Games    b) Olympic Games            c) Asian Games                      **Ans: a**
- She became a world champion in the 50m Rifle Prone game held in \_\_\_\_\_.**  
 a) Germany                      b) Russia                      c) India                      **Ans: a**
- Tejaswami was the first Indian woman shooter to win a \_\_\_\_\_ medal at the World Championship in the 50m rifle prone game.**  
 a) gold                      b) silver                      c) bronze                      **Ans: a**

7. **SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

**Work with your partner. Discuss and share your ideas with the class.**

- a. Tell the class about your ambition in life and the way you are working towards achieving your goal.**

I would like to become a Police Officer with IPS. This has been in my mind from my 6th standard onwards. I am very much impressed by the police officers when they walk majestically in the public. Moreover it is a very good public service. I know I have to prepare well for my IPS competitive exam which is conducted by the UPSC. Now I have started reading some books regarding the competitive exam. I will study well and join a good college in Chennai. As I do my college studies I will join a coaching centre and prepare well. I hope that I will be a successful Police Officer.

- b. Your friend competes with you in academics and sports. Think of the situation wherein you would not be affected by his/her victory and the ways in which you would encourage your friend to succeed.**

It is an acceptable fact that many will compete with us in school in our studies and sports. I accept my friend who competes with me in studies and sports. Both of us play Basketball and both are in the school team. In any match we both would be the top scorers. Sometimes I will be the first and he will be second. If he becomes first I will be second. We have always a healthy competition. In studies also we both do well. My aim is to join IIT and become a successful engineer. He likes to join medicine. Both of us encourage each other for our success.

- 8. Answer the following questions in a short paragraph of about 100 – 150 words each. You may add your own ideas to support your point of view.**

- a. Why do accidents usually happen in the playground? Give your own examples and explain.**

Accidents happen in the playground usually because of the rough game of the players. Each game has its own way of accidents. In cricket, the bowler may be ruthless and it may hit the batsman. It has become fatal in some cases. In football the players play rough game without following the rules properly. In games like volleyball where the team will not have any physical contacts, the accident will happen because of fall on the ground. In athletes one player may cross his line and hit the other and the victim will fall and break his bones.

- b. Everybody is special and everybody is a hero. Each one has a story to tell. In the light of this observation, present your views.**

Life has different openings for different people. So everyone has a special area for him/her to play. The success depends on how the role is played. In this way everybody is a hero in his own area. It depends on his family and society. Sometime the economic status also affects the individuals. In their views the life has different arena. Each one has his/her own story to tell others. Some will have success stories and other may have failure stories. Some will be suffering heroes and other will be successful heroes.

- c. Would you like to exchange your place with someone else? Why/why not?**

I will never exchange my place with anybody. God has given my life and my life will never fit into others. My life depends on my goal in life and the way I take my goal seriously. How can my life fit into others? Moreover my study system may be different from others. I cannot study like others. My favourite subject or sports may be different from others. I cannot change my favourite for someone else.

**d. What sort of encouragement should an athlete in India be given? Give a few suggestions.**

All athletes need some support and appreciation. Especially when they win some medals they expect their country to recognise their feat. They need sponsorship also because we cannot expect all the athletes to be rich enough to meet out their expenses. If they play for some clubs, the particular club should take charge of their expenses. If they play for their school or college, the particular institution should spend money on their behalf. The club or school or college should recognise them when they come back with medals.

**e. You are the School Pupil Leader. Mention some qualities that can be drawn from the field of sports to improve your leadership skills.**

The School Pupil Leader should have leadership qualities. The sports field can give a lot in this regard. The first and foremost quality he gains from the sports field is the team spirit. He has to lead the students of the school and he has to cooperate with many students – his classmates and schoolmates. He has to consult the management and the teachers for the success of a programme. Next quality is tolerance which is also important for a School Pupil Leader. Punctuality is another quality he can get from the sports field. The sports field teaches him to accept others' views.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH**

**Answer the following questions in a short paragraph of about 100 – 150 words each.**

**1. What does the poet try to convey in the poem 'Confessions of a Born Spectator'?**

Ogden Nash was an American poet well known for his light verse. With his unconventional rhyming schemes, he declared the country's best-known producer of humorous poetry. In this poem Nash talks about how people choose different sports in their lives or to become athletes. While admiring the talents of the athletes and sportsmen, the poet accepts that he is neither a sportsman nor an athlete. Children have different goals in life and wish to play various games. Each child has in mind something in particular, but the narrator is happy that he is not one of the players. The narrator admires the talents of all athletes and derives satisfaction from watching them, but does not wish to get their place. He also sometimes regrets that zealous athletes play rough games without caring for the feelings of their sporting rivals. He feels that good sense and caution win over ego. The narrator wholeheartedly offers thanks for his modest physique. Ultimately the narrator is satisfied for not being an athlete.

\*\*◆◆\*\*

U  
N  
I  
T

## 2

## A SHOT IN THE DARK

Hector Hugh Munro

## SUPPLEMENTARY

## About the Author

Author	:	• Hector Hugh Munro • Pen name - Saki
Born	:	18th December, 1870 - Burma.
Occupation	:	• Author • Play wright • Journalist
Famous Works	:	• The Watched Pot - Drama • The Rise of the Russian Empire - Drama • Short Stories
Speciality	:	Mocking Popular Customs and Manners of Edwardian Society
Died	:	14th November 1916.



## Warm Up

Page: 58

## Can you spot 10 differences between these pictures?



The ten differences are:

- ❖ Timing in the wall clock.
- ❖ Left shoe of the man at the entrance.
- ❖ The coin missing in the piggy bank.
- ❖ Lines on the sheet of paper.
- ❖ Single pony tail of the child.
- ❖ The position of number 5 in the currency note.
- ❖ The X mark on the shirt of the lady behind the counter.
- ❖ The flower on the over coat of the lady at the first table.
- ❖ The right shoe of the man at the entrance.
- ❖ The symbol of the dollar on the letter S.

## SUMMARY

The short story 'A Shot in the Dark' has been written by Hector Hugh Munro better known by his pen name Saki. He was a British writer who wrote on witty and mischievous themes. In this story he describes how a man, who considers himself very smart and observant, finds that he had mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth.

Philip Sletherby left for Chalkshire to meet Mrs. SaltpenJago as she was an influential woman in Chalkshire and London. It was very important for Philip Sletherby to impress her so that he could win her support and be benefitted by her influence.

He was met by a club acquaintance at the platform who talked good about Mrs. SaltpenJago. He met a stranger in train who called himself as Bertie, second son of Mrs. SaltpenJago. Bertie checked all his pockets multiple times for his purse but he was unable to find it. He asked for a small help of 3 pounds from Philip Sletherby as he was his mother's friend. He told Philip Sletherby that as he was travelling to Brondquay for 3 days fishing he would return home (Brill Manor) on Monday and then would return his 3 pounds. Philip Sletherby tried to confirm Bertie's crest with the crest of Mrs. SaltpenJago which not only mismatched but also Bertie was not able to tell the correct colour of his mother's hair. Thus Philip Sletherby was not convinced that Bertie was the real son of Mrs. SaltpenJago and hence denied helping Bertie. Bertie got down furiously and later Philip Sletherby thought highly of himself wondering how he would discuss that incident with other guests in the dinner and would be appreciated for his shrewdness. This might increase his chances for being chosen as a Party Manager.

On reaching Brill Manor he was received by Claude People who was a professional lawyer working for Mrs. SaltpenJago. On his way to Brill Manor he talked about all the luxurious features of his expensive car. Philip Sletherby suddenly looked at the two crests kept in a box at the car window and on further enquiry he came to know that they both belonged to the Saltpen family. Claude also told him about recent change in Mrs. SaltpenJago when she shocked everyone with blonde hair and her old hair was brown like Bertie. This made Philip Sletherby silent and speechless in the end of the story. Now he realised that he had made a mistake.


**GLOSSARY**

Page: 62

embarked	–	boarded
espied	–	caught sight of
ineffectually	–	in vain
ruefully	–	regretfully, sorrowfully
pantomime	–	exaggerated behaviour
quid	–	(British) one pound sterling
exchequer	–	national treasury
crest	–	a symbol representing a family, reproduced on writing paper
tackle	–	equipment required for a task or sport
discrepancy	–	difference
soi-distant	–	self styled
astuteness	–	cleverness
sedately	–	in a dignified manner
sumptuous	–	expensive looking
chaise	–	horse-drawn carriage
expounded	–	explained
volubility	–	fluency, talkativeness
blonde	–	pale yellow hair
Honoraria	–	(Latin) honour, a woman of reputation
mater	–	(Latin) mother
courant	–	animal represented in the act of running

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES****1. Answer the following in about 30 – 50 words each.**

Page: 63

**a. Why did Philip Sletherby visit Brill Manor?**

Philip Sletherby visited Brill Manor to meet Mrs. Saltpen-Jago. She was his new acquaintance and he wanted to get a favour from her.

**b. How would Sletherby gain from his friendship with Honoria Saltpen-Jago?**

There was a re-election in Chalkshire for the Parliament. Sletherby might get the seat with the help of his new friendship with Honoria Saltpen-Jago.

**c. Why did his travel companion curse and mutter?**

His travel companion cursed and muttered because he had left behind his sovereign-purse. He had money and his crest in that purse.

**d. Describe Bertie's problem.**

Bertie was the travel companion of Sletherby. He had left behind his sovereign-purse in which he had his money and crest. Now he needed at least three pounds to spend in Brondquay for three days' fishing. But he was left with only six pence.

**e. 'There was a tinge of coldness in his voice.' Why?**

Bertie said that his crest was a demi-lion holding a cross-crosslet in its paw. Sletherby told him that his family crest was a greyhound. This he learnt from his mother's letter to him. Bertie explained that they had both in his family but Sletherby did not believe him. So there was a tinge of coldness in his voice.

**f. Compare the two crests.**

One crest had a demi-lion holding a cross-crosslet in its paw. The other was just a greyhound. The first one was for Saltpen and other was for Jago. The Saltpen-Jago used both the crests.

**g. What was Sletherby's response to Bertie's request?**

Bertie requested Sletherby to lend him two or three pounds and he would return it when he reached his home. Sletherby first accepted. Then because of the confusion about the crests he was not ready to believe him. So he refused to lend him money.

**h. What caught his attention about the car door?**

On the car door there were two crests – one greyhound and the other a demi-lion holding in its paw a cross-crosslet.

**i. Describe Honoria Saltpen-Jago.**

A car was waiting for Sletherby to go to Saltpen-Jago. The car showed the richness and the elegance of the lady. She was a brilliant and level-headed woman. She was a clear thinker and an influential woman. Now she had changed her dark brown hair to brilliant blonde.

**j. Why did K.C's words shock Sletherby?**

Sletherby was shocked because K.C told him that Saltpen-Jago changed her dark brown hair to brilliant blonde.

**2. Rearrange the sentences given below and write a summary of the story in a paragraph.**

Philip Sletherby was travelling by train to Brill Manor. His companion in the train was a young man who was searching for something frantically. The young man introduced himself as Bertie, the son of Saltpen-Jago. Bertie had left his purse behind, after sealing an envelope with the crest on the purse. He stated that it was the Jago crest. He further added that his mother's hair was dark brown similar to his. Bertie needed three pounds desperately and asked Sletherby to lend it to him. Sletherby pointed out to him that his mother's letter had a greyhound courant crest. He explained that the Saltpen crest was that of demi-lion. Suspecting foul play, Sletherby did not give him any money, as he knew Mrs. Saltpen-Jago was a blonde. He was received by Claude People K.C., who had kept on talking about various things. All the time Sletherby was gazing at the door panel of the car on which were the two crests – a demi-lion and a greyhound courant. Sletherby sat dumbstruck on learning that Mrs. Honoria Saltpen Jago had changed her dark brown hair to a blonde just five weeks ago. Sletherby realised that Bertie had not lied to him but that he had mistaken him for a fraud.

**3. Explain the following phrases selected from the story in your own words and work with a partner to make sentences using these phrases.**

Page: 64

a) **an approval**

If we buy something on approval, we can return it in case we are not satisfied with that.  
I bought a set of electronics goods **on approval**.

b) **a rustic holiday** - holiday spent in a rustic way, not in a refined way

The friends decided to go for **a rustic holiday** to a river side for fishing and bathing.

c) **double-distilled idiot** - a real idiot of the first order.

I did not go in time to the interview so I lost a good job. I was a **double-distilled idiot**.

d) **a tinge of coldness** - a slight seriousness

When she realised that her friend was kidding with her she talked to her in a **tinge of coldness**.

e) **making up for lost time** – working hard because of loss of time

Because of long government holidays the workers had to work two days to **make up for lost time**.

**4. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 – 150 words each.**

a) **Describe the youth's strange behaviour when he was in the train.**

'A shot in the Dark' written by Munro – man considers smart – mistakes a genuine man – travelling to Brill Manor – co-passenger – searches something – could not find his purse – left behind with money – described his crest – doubted him – refused to lend money

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor. The youth was his co-passenger. He was about twenty two with dark hair. He was frantically searching something in his bag. He took out many things from the bag and kept them on the seat. But he was not satisfied. It showed that he could not find out what he was searching. Then he had a talk with Sletherby. He told him that he was the second son of Mrs. Saltpen-Jago whom Sletherby was going to meet in Brill Manor. He said that he had left behind his sovereign purse which had some money and his crest. His description of his crest and his mother made Sletherby doubt him. So he refused to lend him three pounds.

**b) One has to be cautious and not be carried away by stories. How did Sletherby exhibit caution?**

'A Shot in the Dark' by Munro – man considers smart – mistakes a genuine man – travelling to Brill Manor – Bertie the co-passenger – searched for something – said second son of Saltpen-Jago – Sletherby doubted him – crest description confirmed doubt – proved wrong – Sletherby cautious

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor. When we travel usually we avoid talking to any strangers and we will be very cautious even if we talk to strangers. His co passenger was Bertie, a youth of twenty two. He was searching something in his bag. He told Sletherby that he was the second son of Mrs. Saltpen-Jago. But Sletherby had some doubts. Bertie said he had left behind his purse and he asked Sletherby to lend him three pounds. When he described his crest and his mother's hair Sletherby's doubt was confirmed. He had been very cautious from the beginning. Though it was proved wrong in the end, we cannot find fault with Sletherby. Everybody should be cautious when we travel with a stranger.

**c) How did Sletherby's judgement of Bertie turn out to be a wrong one?**

'A Shot in the Dark' by Munro – man considers smart – mistakes a genuine man – travelling to Brill Manor – meet Saltpen-Jago – Bertie co-passenger – says second son of Saltpen-Jago – left his purse – asked for a loan – his crest raises doubt – colour of her hair – refused to lend – reached Brill Manor – have two crest – changed her hair colour – he is wrong

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor to meet Saltpen-Jago to get a personal help from her. His co passenger was Bertie who was a twenty two years youth. He told Sletherby that he was the second son of Saltpen-Jago. He further informed Sletherby that he had left behind his purse and he asked him to lend him three pounds. He described his crest as a demi-lion but Sletherby had received a letter from Saltpen-Jago with a different crest – a greyhound. Bertie told him that his mother's hair was blonde but Sletherby had seen her with dark hair. So he doubted Bertie and refused to lend him money. When he reached Brill Manor he came to know that the family had two crests – one demi lion and another one greyhound. Saltpen-Jago had changed her hair from dark to blonde. Now he realised that his judgement was wrong.

**d) As Sletherby, would you apologise to Bertie for your rude behaviour? Give reason.**

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor. Bertie was Sletherby's co passenger and he was frantically searching his bag for something. But he could not find out what he wanted. Then he informed Sletherby that he was the second son of Saltpen-Jago whom Sletherby wanted to meet in Brill Manor. He further told him that he had left behind his crest and money. Sletherby promised him that he would lend him three pounds. Then Bertie gave a description of his crest and his mother's crest. Both did not correspond with the knowledge Sletherby had on Saltpen-Jago. As he doubted Bertie he refused to lend money to him. But when he reached Brill Manor he realised that Bertie was right. If I were Sletherby I would surely ask pardon from him. Doubting a gentleman would have hurt him. Not only that, Bertie was left stranded without money. So because of my rude behaviour I would apologise to him.

- e) **'Seeing is believing.'** How is this humorously disproved in this story? Bring out the irony in the situation.

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor. Bertie was Sletherby's co passenger and he was frantically searching his bag for something. But he could not find out what he wanted. Then he informed Sletherby that he was the second son of Saltpen-Jago whom Sletherby wanted to meet in Brill Manor. He further told him that he had left behind his crest and money. Sletherby promised him that he would lend him three pounds. But due to certain situation Sletherby doubted him and refused to lend him money. Though he saw the son he did not believe him. When he reached Brill Manor, he realised that what Bertie had told him was right and he only mistook him.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 – 150 words each.

1. **Describe the train journey of Philip Sletherby.**

Philip Sletherby was met by a club acquaintance at the platform who talked good about Mrs. Saltpen Jago. He met a stranger in the train who called himself as Bertie, second son of Mrs. Saltpen Jago. Bertie checked all his pockets multiple times for his purse but he was unable to find it. He asked a small help of 3 pounds from Philip Sletherby as he was his mother's friend. He told Philip Sletherby that as he was travelling to Brondquay for 3 days fishing, he would return home (Brill Manor) on Monday and then would return his 3 pounds. Philip Sletherby tried to confirm Bertie's crest with crest of Mrs. Saltpen Jago which not only mismatched but also Bertie was not able to tell the correct colour of his mother's hair. Thus Philip Sletherby was not convinced that Bertie was the real son of Mrs. Saltpen Jago and hence denied to help Bertie. Bertie got down furiously and later Philip Sletherby thought highly of himself that how he would discuss that incident with other guests in the dinner and would be appreciated for his shrewdness. This might increase his chances for being chosen as a Party Manager.

2. **Describe the life of Philip Sletherby after getting down from the train.**

Hector Hugh Munro in his short story 'A Shot in the Dark' describes how a man who considers himself very smart finds that he has mistaken the genuine plea of a stranded youth. Sletherby was travelling to Brill Manor to meet Saltpen-Jago to get a personal help from her. On reaching Brill Manor he was received by Claude People who was a professional lawyer working for Mrs. Saltpen Jago. On his way to Brill Manor he talked about all the luxurious features of his expensive car. Philip Sletherby suddenly looked at the two crests kept in a box at the car window and on further enquiry he came to know that they both belonged to the Saltpen family. Claude also told him about recent change in Mrs. Saltpen Jago when she shocked everyone with blonde hair and her old hair was brown like Bertie. This made Philip Sletherby silent and speechless in the end of the story because he mistook the son of Mrs Saltpen Jago for a cheat. Now he realised that he had made a mistake.

UNIT

2

ICT CORNER

MODAL VERBS

PLAYING GAMES

Quiz 2

Complete with the right modal:

- I \_\_\_ forget to call him today.

must not

cannot

won't

can

Ans: won't

Practice 1

What does the modal verb in this sentence express?

- You don't look well. You should see a doctor.

Possibility

Permission

Advice

Obligation

Ans: Advice

Notes

### English Modal verbs

What are they?

Modal verbs (such as **can, could, shall, should, ought to, will, or would**) are verbs that are usually used with another verb to express ideas such as **possibility, necessity, and permission**. They behave very differently from normal verbs. Here are some important differences:

- Modal verbs do not take "-s" in the third person.
- You use "not" to make modal verbs negative, even in Simple Present and Simple Past.
- To form a question with a modal verb, inverse the modal and the subject.
- Many modal verbs **cannot** be used in the past tenses or the future tenses.
- Modal verbs are always followed with the infinitive without "to".

Quiz 1

What does the modal verb in this sentence express?

- I would like to go to medical school.

Expressing a desire

Expressing a wish

Polite Request

Polite Obligation

Ans: Expressing a wish

UNIT

3

FORGETTING

Robert Lynd

PROSE

About the Author

- Author** : • Robert Wilson Lynd • Pen Name - YY
- Born** : 20th April, 1879 - Belfast, UK
- Education** : • Royal Belfast Academical Institution • Queen's University Belfast
- Career** : • Editor • Poet • Essayist
- Famous Works** : • The Pleasure of Ignorance (1921) • Selected Essays (1923)  
• Rain, Rain, go to Spain (1931) • Y.Y - An Anthology of Essays (1933)
- Awards** : • Silver medal by the Royal Society of Literature  
• Gold medal by The Sunday Times
- Died** : 6th October 1949.



Warm Up

**B. Have you ever lost or misplaced anything of value due to forgetfulness?**

Yes, I have lost my testimonials due to forgetfulness.

**Discuss with your partner and think of some practical ideas to overcome forgetfulness, in your day-to-day activities.**

e.g. setting an alarm
Maintaining a diary
Giving priority to activities
Checking the diary entry in the morning
Using a bit of paper mentioning very important tasks to be done on the particular day

**C. Discuss and share your views with the class on the following.**

**Is forgetfulness a result of carelessness or preoccupation?**

Forgetfulness is mainly a result of preoccupation. As we are busy with some important tasks or activities, we forget certain things. Our focus is on completing the day's work and getting a good name from the teachers as well as parents. In the course of doing the most important task assigned for that particular day, we forget to take back essential things such as lunch box, instrument box, notebooks or books. We may forget certain things on account of carelessness. But mostly preoccupation makes us forget to do important things.

**SUMMARY**

Robert Lynd is a very humorous and delightful Irish essayist. His essays are simple, playful, humorous and satirical. His style of writing is elegant and charming. In his essay "Forgetting", Robert Lynd writes about the root causes of forgetting and also explains what items are usually forgotten by people.

Robert Lynd says that he is amazed by the efficiency of human memory. Modern man remembers even telephone numbers and names of actors and actresses and cricketers and footballers and murderers. Thus he can remember almost everything in his life.

In some matters human memory works less than its usual perfection. For example most people forget to take the medicine. But they don't forget to take meals, and medicines are usually taken before or after or during meals. Psychologists say that we forget things because we wish to forget them. Generally people don't like medicines and so they forget them. But Lynd does not agree with this.

According to Robert Lynd, the commonest form of forgetfulness is posting letters. Most people forget to post letters. So Robert Lynd humorously remarks that if anyone asks him to post a letter he will be a poor judge of character because Robert Lynd never posts the letter even if he keeps it in his pocket for many days. Similarly the author leaves walking sticks and umbrellas during his journey.

Lynd says that a list of articles lost by railway travellers has been published and it shows that most of these travellers are young sportsmen. They have forgotten their cricket-bats and footballs. Lynd says that these boys returning from the games have their imagination filled with the vision of the playing field. The defeated players are very sad and they think about their lost opportunities and failures. The victorious boys have thoughts about their achievements. They are in a dream world and they forget to take their cricket bats and footballs when leaving the train.

Similarly the anglers are also the citizens of dream-land. They are day-dreamers. They forget to take the fishing rod when they go home in the evening. Their minds are filled with matters more glorious. Thus both the sportsmen and anglers are absent-minded people. Lynd remarks that such absent-mindedness is a blessing because these people forget their unhappiness and live in the dream world of Utopia. Great thinkers, poets and philosophers were absent-minded people because their minds were full of high ideals and imagination. Socrates, the great Greek Philosopher and S.T. Coleridge, the great English poet were absent-minded people.

Ordinarily good memory is very common. So if a man does not have a good memory, we may call him an eccentric. Lynd narrates a very funny story of a father who takes his baby out in a perambulator in the morning. When he was going with his child in the perambulator, he was tempted to get into a public house for a glass of beer. Leaving the child outside in the perambulator, he disappeared through the door of the saloon bar. After some time, his wife came that way for shopping. She was horrified to see her sleeping baby in the perambulator. She was so angry with her husband that she decided to teach him a lesson and wheeled away the perambulator. At lunch-time the husband came home smiling cheerfully. He had completely forgotten all about his child and the perambulator. Lynd remarks that very few men below the rank of a philosopher would be capable of such absent mindedness as this man in the story.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 70

vintage	-	wine of high quality produced in a particular year
antipathy	-	strong dislike
fortunes	-	huge sums of money
reluctant	-	unwilling
delinquent	-	a young person who is regularly involved in wrongdoing
exploits	-	daring or heroic acts or actions, feats
abstracted	-	lacking concentration on what is happening around
prosaic	-	dull
mediocre	-	not very good, ordinary

fallible	-	capable of making mistakes
sieve	-	strainer or filter
audacious	-	bold and daring
eccentric	-	tending to act strangely
indignant	-	being very angry
quivering	-	trembling, shivering
vexation	-	irritation, annoyance

## MEANINGS

astonished	wondered	efficiency	effectiveness
vintages	wine produced in a particular year	provincial	local
vile	unpleasant	scarcely	hardly, seldom
methodical	disciplined, careful	prescribed	recommended
surprising	shocking	antipathy	dislike
potions	medicine	delights	makes me happy
stuff	thing	approaches	comes
fortunes	riches	occurs	happens
reluctant	unwilling	trust	believe
departing	leaving	rely	depend
oath	promise	weary	tired
circumstances	situation	embarrassing	shaming
produce	show	evidence	proof
guilt	blame	delinquent	wrong doing youth
frequently	often	destination	place one wants to go
considerable	large	instance	example
exploits	heroic acts	abstracted	preoccupied, lost in thoughts
prevent	stop	prosaic	boring
angler	one who catches fish using angle	inventing	creating
magnificent	great	tribute	praise
intensity	passion, force	glorious	wonderful
virtue	advantage	mediocre	average
desirable	required	fallible	faulty
marvellous	excellent	intellect	ability
exceptional	excellent	sieve	filter
audacious	bold	horror	fear
eccentric	act strangely	anticipate	expecting
indignant	very angry	quivering	trembling
relish	delight / enjoy	cheerfully	happily
vexation	displeasure	survive	continue

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. It may be that it is because of their **antipathy** to pills and potions.  
a) liking                      b) dislike                      c) forgetfulness                      d) willingness
2. Chemists make their **fortunes** out of the medicines people forget to take.  
a) game                      b) factory                      c) popularity                      d) riches
3. I am always **reluctant** to trust a departing visitor to post an important letter.  
a) relieved                      b) regular                      c) unwilling                      d) willing
4. I am no great **delinquent** in such matters.  
a) acceptance                      b) offender                      c) playful                      d) serious
5. They are **abstracted** from the outside world.  
a) preoccupied with                      b) attentive in                      c) thrown from                      d) attracted to
6. Memories prevent them from remembering to do such small **prosaic** things.  
a) interesting                      b) attractive                      c) colourful                      d) boring
7. The absent-minded man has no time to remember the **mediocre**.  
a) great                      b) average                      c) small                      d) past
8. Either he has a memory like a **sieve** or is an audacious perverter of the truth.  
a) filter                      b) water                      c) greatness                      d) imagination
9. Either he has a memory like a sieve or is an **audacious** perverter of the truth.  
a) wicked                      b) bold                      c) cowardice                      d) good
10. .... to her **horror** she discovered her sleeping baby  
a) happiness                      b) sadness                      c) fear                      d) interest
11. **Indignant** at her husband's behaviour, she decided to teach him a lesson.  
a) angry                      b) pleased                      c) happy                      d) worried
12. She arrived home, anticipating with angry relish the white face and **quivering** lips.  
a) tight                      b) trembling                      c) crying                      d) open
13. What was her **vexation** when just before lunch her husband came in smiling .....  
a) displeasure                      b) happiness                      c) anger                      d) seriousness
14. It is the **efficiency** rather than the inefficiency of human memory that compels my wonder.  
a) effectiveness                      b) goodness                      c) quality                      d) quantity
15. It is only a very methodical man, I imagine who can always remember to take the medicine his doctor has **prescribed** for him.  
a) proscribed                      b) written                      c) recommended                      d) pushed
16. The commonest form of forgetfulness I suppose, **occurs** in the matter of posting letters.  
a) happens                      b) delivers                      c) speaks                      d) listens

17. I am always reluctant to trust a **departing** visitor to post an important letter.  
a) staying                      b) asking                      c) shouting                      d) leaving
18. So little do I **rely** on his memory that I put him on his oath before handing the letter to him.  
a) remember                      b) depend                      c) ask                      d) strike
19. **Weary** of holding it in my hand I then put it for safety into one of my pockets.  
a) tired                      b) bold                      c) happy                      d) satisfied
20. I am compelled to produce the **evidence** of my guilt from my pocket.  
a) picture                      b) creation                      c) vision                      d) proof
21. A considerable number of footballs and cricket bats, for **instance** were forgotten.  
a) immediate                      b) later                      c) example                      d) understanding
22. His loss of memory is really a **tribute** to the intensity of the enjoyment.  
a) bane                      b) praise                      c) curse                      d) realistic
23. Men with **fallible** memories have sometimes tried to make out a case .....  
a) great                      b) little                      c) faulty                      d) intact
24. They quote various cases of children or men who had **marvellous** memory.  
a) loss of                      b) imaginary                      c) excellent                      d) small
25. She arrived home, **anticipating** with angry relish the white face and quivering lips.  
a) thinking                      b) saying                      c) shouting                      d) expecting

Answers												
1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. c	6. d	7. b	8. a	9. b	10. c	11. a	12. b	13. a
14. a	15. c	16. a	17. d	18. b	19. a	20. d	21. c	22. b	23. c	24. c	25. d	

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. Many people who read it have been **astonished** at the absent mindedness of their fellows.  
a) attained                      b) received                      c) known                      d) wondering
2. He can tell the name of the **provincial** hotel at which he had a vile meal during the summer.  
a) great                      b) kingly                      c) local                      d) foreign
3. He can tell the name of the provincial hotel at which he had a **vile** meal during the summer.  
a) pleasant                      b) tasty                      c) small                      d) unpleasant
4. How many of them forget to shut the front door when leaving the house? **Scarcely** more.  
a) plenty                      b) hardly                      c) surely                      d) formerly
5. It is only a very **methodical** man, I imagine who can always remember to take the medicine his doctor has prescribed for him.  
a) disciplined                      b) critical                      c) happy                      d) anxious
6. This is the more **surprising**.  
a) great                      b) strong                      c) shocking                      d) talking

7. It may be that it is because of their **antipathy** to pills and potions.  
 a) liking                      b) dislike                      c) forgetfulness                      d) willingness
8. It may be that it is because of their antipathy to pills and **potions**.  
 a) part                      b) total                      c) treatment                      d) medicine
9. The very prospect of a new and widely advertised cure-all **delights** me.  
 a) makes happy                      b) makes sad                      c) makes strong                      d) makes weak
10. Even if I have the **stuff** in my pocket I forget about it.  
 a) stone                      b) butter                      c) thing                      d) colour
11. I forget it as soon as the hour **approaches** at which I ought to swallow it.  
 a) leaves                      b) comes                      c) means                      d) goes
12. I am always reluctant to **trust** a departing visitor to post an important letter.  
 a) find                      b) believe                      c) ask                      d) give
13. So little do I rely on his memory that I put him on his **oath** before handing the letter to him.  
 a) trust                      b) pocket                      c) promise                      d) hand
14. After that, it has an unadventurous life till a long chain of **circumstances** leads to a number of embarrassing questions being asked .....  
 a) strength                      b) faithfulness                      c) situations                      d) placements
15. After that, it has an unadventurous life till a long chain of circumstances leads to a number of **embarrassing** questions being asked .....  
 a) convincing                      b) joyful                      c) clever                      d) shaming
16. I am compelled to **produce** the evidence of my guilt from my pocket.  
 a) cultivate                      b) show                      c) make                      d) create
17. I am compelled to produce the evidence of my **guilt** from my pocket.  
 a) blame                      b) sight                      c) action                      d) doing
18. I buy them **frequently**.  
 a) never                      b) for others                      c) often                      d) sometimes
19. A **considerable** number of footballs and cricket bats, for instance were forgotten.  
 a) small                      b) known                      c) calculated                      d) large
20. They recall their **exploits** or their errors.  
 a) expenditure                      b) heroic acts                      c) mistakes                      d) dream acts
21. Memories **prevent** them from remembering to do such small prosaic things.  
 a) lead                      b) stop                      c) create                      d) allow
22. The man is inventing **magnificent** lies on his journey home after a day's fishing.  
 a) magnitude                      b) attractive                      c) great                      d) reasonable
23. His loss of memory is really a tribute to the **intensity** of the enjoyment.  
 a) passion                      b) interior                      c) thinking                      d) release

24. His mind is filled with matter more glorious.

- a) evil                      b) faithful                      c) wonderful                      d) dutiful

25. Absent-mindedness of this kind seems to me all but a virtue.

- a) vice                      b) wisdom                      c) intelligence                      d) advantage

**OPPOSITES**

doubt	×	certain	common	×	peculiar
remember	×	forget	vile	×	pleasing
ordinary	×	unusual	scarcely	×	often
perfection	×	imperfection, worthlessness	methodical	×	careless
remain	×	leave	regularly	×	irregularly
certain	×	uncertain	antipathy	×	liking, sympathy
fail	×	success	widely	×	narrowly
departing	×	staying	weary	×	fresh
long	×	short	embarrassing	×	comfortable
frequently	×	seldom	arrive	×	depart
destination	×	beginning	serious	×	light-hearted
prevent	×	permit	imaginative	×	unimaginative
tribute	×	blame	virtue	×	vice
often	×	seldom	mediocre	×	excellent
desirable	×	undesirable	fallible	×	perfect
superiority	×	inferiority	various	×	similar
whole	×	part	audacious	×	timid
capable	×	incapable	efficient	×	inefficient

**ADDITIONAL EXERCISES**

**EXERCISE WITH ANSWER**

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

- He can tell the name of the provincial hotel at which he had a vile meal during the summer,  
a) unpleasant                      b) pleasant                      c) costly                      d) cheap
- It is only a methodical man, I imagine who can always remember to take the medicine.  
a) careless                      b) careful                      c) lazy                      d) busy
- It may be that it is because of their antipathy to pills and portion.  
a) hatred                      b) liking                      c) ownership                      d) controversy
- A long chain of circumstances leads to a number of embarrassing questions being asked.  
a) comfortable                      b) uncomfortable                      c) difficult                      d) easy
- The ordinary man arrives at his destination with all his bags and trunks safe.  
a) end                      b) place                      c) beginning                      d) vision

6. Memories prevent them from remembering to do such small **prosaic** things.  
a) boring                      b) interesting                      c) poetic                      d) compelling
7. Men with **fallible** memories have sometimes tried to make out a case for their superiority.  
a) perfect                      b) weak                      b) thick                      c) bad
8. He **remembers** appointments for lunch and dinner.  
a) keeps                      b) leaves                      c) offers                      d) forgets
9. The fact **remains** however that a few but the moral giants remember to take their medicine.  
a) rests                      b) needs                      c) sells                      d) leaves
10. The very prospect of a new and **widely** advertised cure-all delights me.  
a) broadly                      b) narrowly                      c) purposely                      d) slowly

Answers									
1. b	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. c	6. b	7. a	8. d	9. d	9. b

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. I **doubt** whether it would be found that absent-mindedness is common.  
a) sure                      b) assure                      c) impossible                      d) unfair
2. I doubt whether it would be found that absent-mindedness is **common**.  
a) unclear                      b) always                      c) peculiar                      d) spread
3. In his **ordinary** life he remembers everything that is expected to remember.  
a) usual                      b) irregular                      c) unusual                      d) unhappy
4. Many people **fail** to remember them at the appointed time.  
a) need                      b) willing                      c) succeed                      d) unwilling
5. I am always reluctant to trust a **departing** visitor to post an important letter.  
a) visiting                      b) leaving                      c) talking                      d) staying
6. Memories **prevent** them from remembering to do such small prosaic things.  
a) help                      b) remove                      c) confuse                      d) permit
7. His loss of memory is really a **tribute** to the intensity of his enjoyment.  
a) blame                      b) praise                      c) compliment                      d) misappropriation
8. His loss of memory is really a tribute to the **intensity** of his enjoyment.  
a) power                      b) strength                      c) moderation                      d) concentration
9. The absent-minded man has no time to remember the **mediocre**.  
a) intelligent                      b) strong                      c) popper                      d) excellent
10. The question whether the possession of a good memory is altogether **desirable** has often been discussed.  
a) wanted                      b) unwanted                      c) accepted                      d) misunderstood

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 70

**1. Based on the understanding of the essay, answer the following questions in one or two sentences each.****a) What does Lynd actually wonder at?**

Lynd actually wonders at the efficiency of human memory.

**b) Name few things that a person remembers easily.**

A person easily remembers telephone numbers, addresses of his friends, dates of a good vintage, appointments of lunch and dinner, names of actors, actresses, cricketers, football players and murderers.

**c) How do psychologists interpret forgetfulness?**

Psychologists say that people forget things because they want to forget them. If we have aversion for something we forget it.

**d) What is the commonest type of forgetfulness according to Lynd?**

According to Lynd the commonest type of forgetfulness is to post letters.

**e) What does the author mean when he says the letter in his pocket leads an unadventurous life?**

The letter is kept in the pocket and it is totally forgotten and it stays in the pocket for a long time till someone asks about the letter.

**f) What are the articles the author forgets most often?**

Books, walking sticks and umbrella are the articles the author forgets most often.

**g) Who are the citizens of 'dreamland'? Why?**

The players are the citizens of 'dreamland'. After the game they think about what happened in the playground.

**h) What is common about the 'angler' and the 'poet'?**

The common thing about the 'angler' and the 'poet' is that they forget about their things. It is because their mind is filled with some serious and glorious matters.

**2. Based on your reading answer the following questions in two to four sentences each.**

Page: 71

**a) What made people wonder about the absentmindedness of their fellow beings?**

A list of articles lost by railway travellers was published. When people read the list they wondered about the absentmindedness of their fellow beings.

**b) What are our memories filled with?**

Our memories are filled with the names of actors, actresses, cricketers, football players and murderers. Moreover we remember the name of the hotel where we had an unpleasant meal and all the items of our dress. Normally we do not forget to shut the door when we leave the house.

**c) When does human memory work with less than its usual capacity?**

Human memory works less than its usual capacity when it comes to the case of taking medicine. It is easy to remember because medicine is connected to our food. But we forget it many a time.

**d) Why according to Lynd, should taking medicines be one of the easiest actions to remember?**

Taking medicine should be one of the easiest actions to remember. Medicine is supposed to be taken during, before or after meal. The meal itself should be a reminder for taking medicine.

**e) How do the chemists make fortunes out of the medicines people forget to take?**

Most of the people forget to take medicine. Because of this they will buy medicine again and again. Moreover their disease will not get cured without the medicine. So they have to buy another set of medicine. In this way chemists make their fortunes.

**f) The list of articles lost in trains suggests that sportsmen have worse memories than their ordinary serious-minded fellows. Why does Lynd say this?**

When the sportsmen return from the games their imagination is still filled with the vision of the playing-field. They recall their exploits in their mind. They are not connected with the outside world. So they forget to take the ball and bat with them when they leave the train.

**g) What kind of absent-mindedness is considered as a virtue by Lynd?**

The anglers and poets fill their mind with more glorious matters than the ordinary things. Such absent-mindedness is considered a virtue. They often make the best of their life so they do not remember the ordinary things.

**h) Narrate the plight of the baby on its day out.**

The baby was taken out in a perambulator by its father. On his way home he wanted to get into a store. So he left the pram outside and entered the store. After finishing his work he came out through another door and went back home forgetting the child. The mother happened to come on that way and was shocked to see the abandoned baby. She pushed the pram home thinking that the father would be worried about the missing baby. But when he came home he asked her what she had for lunch. He totally forgot about the baby.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

Answer the following questions in two to four sentences each.

**1. What does the author say about the statesmen's memory?**

The author says that statesmen have extraordinarily bad memories. Two statesmen cannot report what happened in a place in the same way. Each report is different from the other. Often the facts in the autobiographies and speeches of them are not accepted easily. It shows that they have poor memory.

**2. What did the baby's mother anticipate after arriving home with the baby?**

She anticipated that her husband would come inside the house with anxious and guilty face and quivering lips thinking that their baby had been stolen by someone.

**3. What was the reaction of the husband who had taken the child out when he reached home?**

The husband came inside the house with a big smile and asked his wife what she had for lunch. He totally forgot that he had taken the child out.

**3. Answer the following in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words each.**

- a) **You have borrowed a branded cricket bat from your reluctant friend for an outstation match. After returning home you realise you have absent-mindedly left it in the hotel room. Write a letter of apology and regret to your friend.**

27, Nethaji Road,  
Nagerkoil.

7th August 2018.

Dear Raju,

Thank you so much for having given me your cricket bat. I played well with your bat and I am sure your bat was a lucky bat to me. As you know, we won the match and my contribution was great. After the prize distribution we went to our hotel room and took rest for some time. Then we were talking about our exploits and we were enjoying ourselves. We packed everything and were waiting for our cab to come to go to the railway station. Within a short time the cab came and we all ran happily to get our places. In the cab also we were talking about the match. When I got into the train it started moving. Then I realised my blunder. I forgot to pick up your bat from the hotel room. Immediately I tried to contact the manager and told him about this. He promised me to help. I really feel sorry for this. I know how much you love that bat and you gave me just to help me. I hope we will get back the bat. I request you to forgive me for this. When I reach our village I will meet you. Sorry for the trouble I have created.

Your loving friend,  
Selva.

- b) **Kahlil Gibran states 'Forgetfulness is a form of freedom.' Write an article for your school magazine, linking your ideas logically and giving appropriate examples.**

'Forgetfulness is a form of freedom'. It may sound little funny because we curse ourselves if we forget something. Good memory power is always appreciated. In the period of our study we always want to remember what we learn. We feel sorry if we forget our lessons in the exam hall. But in many other cases, forgetfulness is a blessing. Certain unpleasant experience in our memory will be a thorn to us. It will be pricking us all the time. If we forget that we will be free of that unpleasant experience. Such situation occurs very often in our life. Maybe a failure in our life, this will be spoiling our happiness and it will be a block for further positive thinking. Some family may lose one of the members and it will be a trying experience for the whole family. They cannot go on living with that sad experience throughout their life. Slowly they will be free of that sad feeling. Loss of a job will also give some problem. But when we forget this we will be free to search for a job. We might land up in a better job. So Gibran is right in saying 'Forgetting is a form of freedom.'

- c) **Will you sympathise or ridicule someone who is intensely forgetful? Write an essay justifying your point.**

The people who forget very often are normally ridiculed because they lose many opportunities in life to grow. In public life they are not treated well. Even in his family, others will not have confidence in him. He may not be entrusted with any serious work. In some cases highly intelligent people who have some great ideas in their mind forget trivial things. The trivial things may affect the family. For example a wife entrusts on her husband to pay the electricity bill on the last day; but he comes back home without paying the bill. He must have been thinking about something great in his mind. But the family will suffer because of his forgetfulness. In such cases the family people should have good understanding of the person and they should not believe him for doing such things like paying electricity, or telephone bill. Here a question arises – whether such people should be sympathised with or ridiculed. If his forgetfulness is due to the preoccupied mind it is a case to be sympathised with but if it is a habit it is a case to be ridiculed.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS**

Answer the following in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words each.

**1. What does Lynd want to convey in his lesson 'Forgetting'?**

Robert Lynd, the famous essayist in his lesson 'Forgetting' describes the forgetfulness of people. A list of lost articles in railways was published and it shows that people forget to take their belongings with them. People do not forget most of the things. We keep in our memory the telephone numbers, addresses of our friends, dates of the vintage, names of cricketers, footballers, actors and actresses. But our memory does not act to its full capacity. Lynd takes the example of medicine. Most of the people forget to take medicine though it is connected to meal. The medicines are taken during, before or after meal. So the meal itself is a reminder. But many people forget to take medicine. Lynd does not accept the explanation given by the psychologists that people forget to take medicine because they want to forget it. Another common forgetfulness is regarding posting letters. Most of the people forget to post their own letters. Lynd usually forgets to pick up his books and walking sticks. Anglers and sportsmen have very poor memory power. After their feat in the field the sportsmen will be thinking about their exploits and they will be in a dreamland. So they forget to take ball and bat with them.

**2. What happened to the baby taken out by its father?**

Robert Lynd, the famous essayist in his lesson 'Forgetting' describes the forgetfulness of people. The baby was taken out in a perambulator by its father. On his way home he wanted to get into a pub to have a glass of bear. So he left the pram outside the store and entered it. It had many exits. After finishing his work he came out through another door and went back home forgetting the child. The mother happened to come on that way and was shocked to see the abandoned baby. She wanted to teach a lesson to her husband. She pushed the pram home thinking that the father would be worried about the missing baby. She came back home and thought that her husband would return home with a worried face. But when he came home he asked her what she had for lunch. He totally forgot about the baby. Such situations are not very common but people such as the rank of philosopher would forget even this. It is because their minds are filled with things which are greater and more glorious.

**VOCABULARY**

**A. Homophones and Heteronyms.**

- Homonyms are two or more words that have same pronunciation but different meanings. They are of two types:

**i. Homographs**

- Homographs are words with same spelling and same sound but different in meanings.

e.g. park – a piece of public land for recreation  
 park – to leave a vehicle in a particular place  
 bat – a sport equipment for hitting the ball  
 bat – a mammal

**ii. Homophones**

- Homophones are two or more words with the same sound but with different spellings and meanings.

e.g. dear – a loved one  
 deer – a wild animal

- Heteronyms also known as heterophones are two or more words with same spelling but different sounds and meanings.
  - e.g. lead – a metal
  - lead – guide
  - minute – a period of time
  - minute – very small

### Complete the sentences by choosing a suitable word from those given in the brackets.

- i) Nobody can say whether there will be an improvement in the weather. (whether / weather)
- ii) Your ring is loose. Do not lose it. (loose / lose)
- iii) We found a packet of biscuit in the old man's shirt pocket. (pocket / packet)
- iv) When the pole vaulter cleared 28 feet it was declared a record feat. (feet / feat)
- v) Explain the quote 'Cut your coat according to your cloth.' (coat / quote)
- vi) The stranger paused for a moment before he passed my house. (paused / passed)
- vii) The weary dancer turned wiry after final performance. (weary / wiry)
- viii) The chain that I presented to my sister was not made of gold; it was just gilt. I am suffering from a sense of guilt. (guilt / gilt)

Page: 72

### Form meaningful sentences using the given words to bring out at least two different meanings.

1. She got into the **train** to go to the seminar to **train** the students.
2. When the mother **tears** open the letter from her son, **tears** well up in her eyes.
3. When the **wind** was blowing outside they **wind** the key of his watch.
4. The **light** was on and I saw a **light** figure in the room.
5. He took the **file** to **file** all the papers.
6. I cannot **bear** the noise of the **bear**.

### B. Clipped Words

- We came across the word 'perambulator' in the last paragraph of the story. The word 'perambulator' can also be expressed as 'pram' in short. The word 'perambulator' is an unclipped word and the word 'pram' is a clipped word.

### What are clipped words?

Clipped words are words that are formed by dropping one or more syllables from longer words without changing the meaning. Clipping is forming new words by shortening long words. We usually use them while speaking or in informal speech.

- e.g. aeroplane – plane
- examination – exam
- demarcate – mark

### Write the clipped and unclipped forms of the given words and complete the table.

UNCLIPPED	CLIPPED
chimpanzee	chimp
photograph	photo
microphone	mike
cafeteria	cafe

UNCLIPPED	CLIPPED
memorandum	memo
influenza	flu
hippopotamus	hippo
bridegroom	groom

gasoline	gas
helicopter	copter
telephone	phone
university	varsity

fanatic	fan
demonstration	demo
refrigerator	fridge
perambulator	pram

**C. Refer to a dictionary and match the professions with their relevant job.**

Page: 73

	A	B	Answer
1.	pathologist	studies languages and their structure	studies diseases
2.	ornithologist	studies atmosphere, weather and climate	studies birds
3.	entomologist	studies the matter that constitutes the Earth	studies insects
4.	archaeologist	studies earthquakes	studies artefacts and physical remains
5.	sociologist	studies reptiles and amphibians	studies functioning of human society
6.	geologist	studies functioning of human society	studies the matter that constitutes the Earth
7.	linguist	studies artefacts and physical remains	studies languages and their structure
8.	seismologist	studies birds	studies earthquakes
9.	herpetologist	studies insects	studies reptiles and amphibians
10.	meteorologist	studies diseases	studies atmosphere, weather and climate

**Fill the blanks choosing the words from the box. Refer to a dictionary if required.**

thespian	sadist	polyglot	ambidextrous	philanthropist	misanthrope
bibliophile	nonagenarian	teetotaler	globetrotter	optimist	

- e.g.** My brother buys a load of books at the book fair every year. He is a great lover of books and has a huge collection at home. He is a bibliophile.
- Peter always refuses alcohol when it is offered to him at parties and takes a soft drink instead. He says he always has and always will abstain from alcohol and it is a matter of principle for him. We call Peter a teetotaler.
  - Aruna always looks at the bright side of things. Even in the face of misfortune, she firmly believes that everything will work out for the best in the end. What can we call Aruna? Optimist
  - The rich industrialist donated a huge sum of money to set up a public library in his native village. He is a philanthropist and a social reformer.
  - The chairperson of our company keeps travelling all over the world to attend conferences and we call her a globetrotter.
  - Antony has the amazing ability to use both his hands, equally well. He can write, draw and perform various other tasks with equal speed and efficiency with his left as well as right hand. Antony is ambidextrous.

- vi. Due to some disturbing incidents in her childhood, Neetu grew into a reclusive adult. She tends to keep aloof and avoids all kinds of social activities. Neetu is a misanthrope.
- vii. Tharani serves as interpreter at meetings between statesmen from different countries. She is also a much sought-after tour guide, as she is well-versed and fluent in multiple languages. Tharani is a polyglot.
- viii. My grandparents are in their nineties. I am glad that this nonagenarian couple is active, cheerful and in good health.
- ix. Richard Burton was a gifted theatre artist. He donned several roles with ease and is especially famous for the Shakespearean parts he played on stage. Mr. Burton is a born thespian. Page: 74
- x. The chairman of this concern seems to derive pleasure from inflicting pain on others. He humiliates and hurts his subordinates for no reason. He is a real sadist.

**D. Find the antonyms of the following words in the puzzle and shade them with a pencil. The first one has been done for you.**

seldom	admitted	methodical	reality	virtue	vile	indignant	relish	fact
--------	----------	------------	---------	--------	------	-----------	--------	------

Y	V	P	I	N	X	T	F	I	Y	L	M	I	J	I	G	D	W	K	R
H	O	X	J	W	F	K	R	L	W	I	A	Q	M	Z	Y	H	H	M	X
F	A	N	T	A	S	Y	R	E	J	S	R	D	M	C	Q	E	S	N	C
T	M	C	X	A	U	E	E	Y	L	H	A	T	E	E	P	D	E	F	F
O	H	Z	V	C	D	T	Q	V	J	A	F	I	N	A	E	E	D	Q	N
U	F	H	C	R	L	D	D	X	D	O	O	G	N	F	N	N	G	C	G
L	B	I	O	R	O	F	M	G	Q	A	E	X	I	N	Z	I	A	F	D
V	L	S	C	O	N	F	C	L	T	Q	H	E	E	M	Y	E	L	M	T
R	I	U	G	T	O	N	O	P	T	M	D	W	C	Q	J	D	E	G	C
D	K	L	Y	Z	I	L	D	L	H	Q	G	Q	I	D	L	E	G	T	O
E	F	D	L	R	T	O	D	E	K	B	V	M	V	A	S	P	H	M	V
L	N	X	T	M	C	C	N	A	E	V	I	R	R	A	F	R	W	S	F
I	X	M	N	H	I	H	F	S	E	N	C	L	J	P	A	K	R	O	P
G	M	N	E	X	F	C	A	C	K	Y	S	F	G	U	O	T	J	Y	N
H	M	P	U	X	P	Q	I	D	K	C	Q	J	I	Q	F	C	F	G	U
T	O	A	Q	J	H	V	D	Q	Z	R	D	I	F	N	T	X	O	I	I
E	W	P	E	L	X	Q	N	J	E	X	S	Y	B	K	E	W	A	W	O
D	I	N	R	B	U	M	Z	H	U	V	H	V	D	J	N	X	O	D	G
U	C	H	A	P	H	A	Z	A	R	D	D	I	A	V	Q	N	I	F	S
W	W	D	N	W	X	J	D	K	L	I	O	L	Q	H	H	Q	D	X	U

seldom	×	often	vile	×	good
admitted	×	denied	indignant	×	delighted
methodical	×	disorderly	relish	×	hate
reality	×	fantasy	fact	×	fiction
virtue	×	vice			

**LISTENING ACTIVITY**

Page: 75

**First read the incomplete sentences given below. Listen to two interesting anecdotes about two scientists that your teacher will read aloud or play on the recorder. Then based on your understanding, complete the sentences.**

- i. Edison travelled to New Jersey by train.
- ii. The station master enquired Edison if he had left anything behind.
- iii. Edison raced back to the car, when he saw his newly wedded wife.
- iv. Albert Einstein was working in Princeton University.
- v. One day, when he was going back home he forgot his home address.
- vi. Einstein asked the cab driver if he knew Einstein's home.
- vii. The driver was so good that he refused to charge Einstein.

**SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

**Work with a partner and take turns to share your views and suggestions with the class.**

- i) You are travelling in a train. When the Train Ticket Examiner enters your compartment, much to your shock, you realise you have forgotten to bring your train ticket. How will you handle the situation?**

It is an embarrassing situation. I spent the money for the ticket and received the ticket also. But I could not produce to the right person at the right time. I will try to explain to him the real situation. The trip chart has my name and the ticket number. I have the identity card to prove I am the person holding that particular ticket. But as a rule I have to show the ticket also to the TTR. It is not an E-ticket so it is not in my mail. The only way is to pay the fine and travel.

- ii) You forget to wish your friend on his/her birthday. He gets very angry. How will you try to pacify him/her? Construct a dialogue of about 4 to 5 exchanges and enact a role play!**

Shanthy : Hi, Belated happy birthday wishes. Many more happy returns of the day

Nirmala : You are my best friend but you forgot to wish me on my birthday.

Shanthy : I am really sorry for that. I had the visit of my aunt and uncle from the US and they left only at night.

Nirmala : I know you did not have any work to do because of that. Don't give me any excuse.

Shanthy : Really I tell you I was very busy taking care of them especially two children.

Nirmala : Yes I remember they have two children; they must be grown up now.

Shanthy : I am happy at least now you understand me.

Nirmala : Still I am angry with you; but anyway you are my best friend. So let us be happy.

- iii) 'Forgetfulness is the beginning of happiness.' Do you agree or disagree? Discuss in the class.**

In certain cases it is true to say forgetfulness is the beginning of happiness. It may sound little funny because we curse ourselves if we forget something. Good memory power is always appreciated. In the period of our study we always want to remember what we learn. We feel sorry if you forget our lessons in the exam hall. But in many other cases forgetfulness is a blessing. Certain unpleasant experience in our memory will be a thorn to us. It will be pricking us all the time. If we forget that we will be free of that unpleasant experience. So forgetfulness is the beginning of happiness.

**iv) Is there a link between intelligence and absent-mindedness? Share your views on this subject.**

Yes, there is a link between intelligence and absent-mindedness. Usually absent minded people are poets, philosophers and scientists. We see such characters in Edison and Einstein. When our mind is filled with some glorious things we forget some trivial things like switching off the lights, posting letters etc. So people with high intelligence become absent minded. The people with low intelligence cannot remember anything and they should be helped by others.

**READING**

Page: 77

**Read the following biographical extract on Sujatha Rangarajan, a Science fiction writer and answer the questions that follow.**

**A. Answer the following questions in a sentence or two.**

**i) How was Jeeno different from other robots?**

Jeeno was different from other robots because it behaves and thinks like a human and it instructs the humans.

**ii) What precaution should one take while writing Science fiction stories?**

The writer of science fiction should be cautious about one thing. The story should draw some parallels or association from the emotions and desires of the present humankind.

**iii) What inspired Sujatha's themes?**

Sujatha took inspiration from Mary Shelly's Frankenstein.

**iv) Why were Sujatha's sci-fi stories impressive?**

Sujatha's stories were impressive because the themes were bold. He opened up a new world to the readers with his writings on holograms and computers.

**B. Find words from the passage which mean the same as the following.**

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| i) difficult to believe (para 1)                             | - incredible   |
| ii) a style or category of art, music or literature (para 2) | - genre        |
| iii) having many sides (para 4)                              | - multifaceted |
| iv) capable of being understood (para 5)                     | - fathomable   |

**GRAMMAR**

**PASSIVISATION**

- We use the active form to say what the subject does.  
e.g. I speak English everyday.
- We use the passive form to say what happens to people and things - to say what is done to them.  
e.g. English is spoken by me everyday.

**A. Identify the changes in these pairs of active and passive constructions.**

Page: 78

**1. The pilot flew the airplane to Bengaluru.  
The airplane was flown to Bengaluru by the pilot.**

The first sentence has 'the pilot' as its Active subject. The 'airplane' is its Active object. The verb 'flew' is an Active verb. The importance is given to 'the doer' ie. The Active subject

The second sentence has 'the airplane' as its Passive subject. The verb 'was flown' is the passive verb. The Active subject becomes the Passive object.

**2. The bananas were eaten by the monkeys.**

**The monkeys ate the bananas.**

1st sentence	:	the bananas	-	Passive subject
		were eaten	-	Passive verb
		the monkeys	-	Passive object
2nd Sentence	:	the monkeys	-	Active subject
		ate	-	Active verb
		the bananas	-	Active object

**B. Change the voice of the following sentences.**

**1. Mohammed follows the rules**

The rules are followed by Mohammed.

**2. Mohan has completed the course.**

The course has been completed by Mohan.

**3. Magdalene is singing the prayer.**

The prayer is being sung by Magdalene.

**4. Who wrote this complaint?**

By whom was this complaint written?

**5. May God bless you with happiness!**

May you be blessed by God with happiness!

**6. A house is being constructed by them.**

They are constructing a house.

**7. Let the door not be slammed.**

Don't slam the door.

**8. The team was trained by the coach.**

The coach trained the team.

**C. Make sentences using the passive forms of the verbs.**

**1. Tagore / award / Nobel Prize**

Tagore was awarded the Nobel Prize.

**2. IIM Ahmedabad / establish / 1961**

IIM Ahmedabad was established in 1961.

**3. Chattisgarh / form / 2000**

Chattisgarh was formed in 2000.

**4. First passenger train / inaugurated / India / 1853**

The First passenger train was inaugurated in India in 1853.

**5. Indian Airlines / set up / 1953**

The Indian Airlines was set up in 1953.

**D. Look at the newspaper items given below. Use the information in the headlines to complete the sentence.****1. HEAVY RAINS LASH CHENNAI**

Heavy rains threw normal life out of gear.

**2. NEET CLASSES TO BEGIN ON SEPT. 20th**

The centre coordinator informed the candidates that the NEET classes will begin on September 20th.

**3. 12 INJURED AS BUSES COLLIDE**

About twelve people were injured as two private buses collided at the Dindigul bus terminus today.

Page: 79

**E. Expand the following news headlines in a sentence.****1. Municipal elections in December**

Municipal elections will be held in December.

**2. Telephone customers to get video phone**

There is a chance for telephone customers to get video phones.

**3. Card license to replace paper driving license**

Within a short time card license will replace paper driving license.

**4. ATM without security guard to close**

The Central Government asked the banks to close down the ATMs without security guard.

**F. Describing a process.**

Anu and her little brother want to refresh themselves with a hot cup of tea during study time. Help them prepare tea. Given below are the steps/instructions to make two cups of tea.

- ❖ Boil two glasses of water in a vessel.
- ❖ Add two tea-spoons of tea leaves and  $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of milk.
- ❖ Cover the vessel with a lid.
- ❖ Filter the tea and pour in cups.
- ❖ Add 2 teaspoons of sugar and stir it.
- ❖ Serve hot.

**1. Complete the passage by filling the blanks with the passive forms of the verbs.**

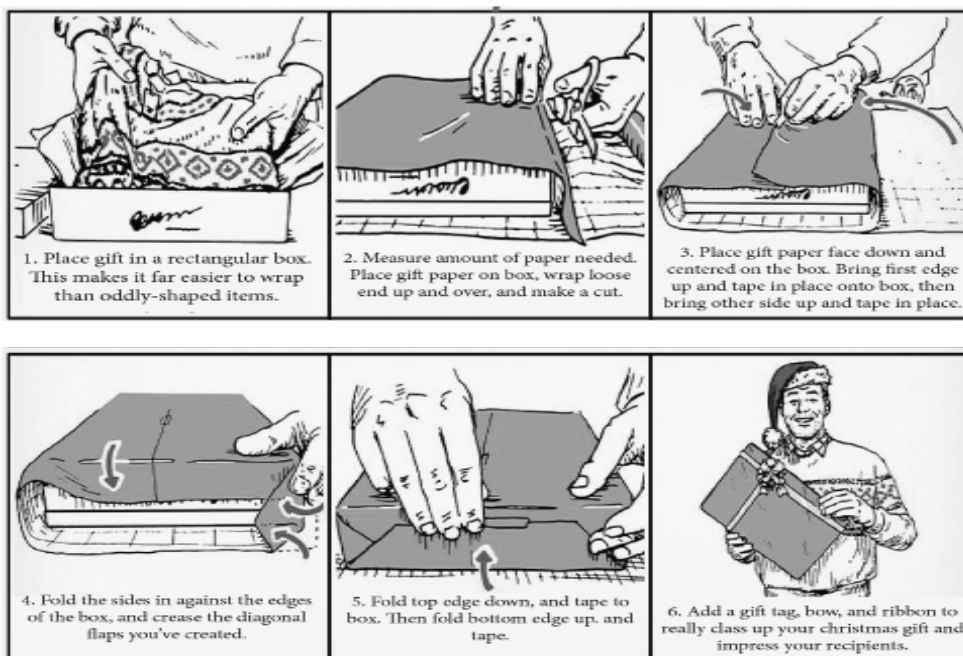
The water should be boiled in a vessel. Then tea leaves and milk are added to water. The vessel is covered with a lid. The tea is filtered and poured into the cups. Sugar is added and stirred. The tea is served hot.

**2. Here is a recipe to make chocolate cake in a pressure cooker. Rewrite the instructions in passive voice.**

- i. The flour, cocoa powder and baking powder are first sifted in a mixing bowl.
- ii. Butter, sugar, salt, water and vanilla are added and the ingredients are beaten using a whisk.
- iii. Eggs are added and the batter is beaten until it is smooth.
- iv. The batter is transferred into a baking tin.
- v. The pressure cooker covered with a lid is heated without pressure for 3-4 minutes on high heat. Then the cake tin is placed in the empty cooker. (Water is not added in the cooker.)
- vi. Lid is closed (without pressure), the flame is lowered and it is let to be cooked for about 30 minutes.

3. Write the process of wrapping a Christmas gift in a paragraph in passive form, with the help of the pictures given below.

Page: 80



Gift is placed in a rectangular box. Thus it is made far easier to wrap than oddly-shaped items. Amount of paper needed is measured. Gift paper is placed on the box, loose end is wrapped up and over and a cut is made. Gift paper is placed face down and centered on the box. First edge is brought up and tapped in place on to box, then other side is brought up and tapped in place. The sides are folded in against the edge of the box, and the diagonal flaps created by you are creased. Top edge is folded and tapped to the box. Then bottom edge is folded up and tapped. A gift tag, bow and ribbon are added to really class up your Christmas gift. Your recipients will be impressed.

### Subject and Verb Agreement (Concord)

When you write a sentence you must make sure that the subject and the verb agree.

Subject-verb agreement is the correspondence of a verb with its subject in person and number. The basic rule states that a singular subject takes a singular verb, while a plural subject takes a plural verb.

#### Always Plural

- ❖ after people, police, cattle, a number of, a group of
- ❖ when subject has two nouns joined by 'and'
- ❖ few, many, several, both, all, some
- ❖ scissors, tweezers, trousers, shorts, jeans, glasses

#### Always Singular

- ❖ after 'one of, a kind of, a type of'
- ❖ units of measurement and mathematical expressions
- ❖ when the subject has two singular nouns joined by 'or'
- ❖ nouns connected with each of, each one, either of, neither of, someone, something, anybody, anything, no one, nothing, everybody, everything
- ❖ names of subjects: mathematics, politics, civics, economics, physics etc.

Page: 81

**A. Underline the correct verb in these sentences.**

1. Rekha and her sisters watch (watch / watches) television every day.
2. Ravi doesn't (doesn't / don't) like sports.
3. My classmates study (study / studies) before a test.
4. One of the cookies is (is / are) missing.
5. A lady with ten cats lives (live / lives) in that big house.
6. Measles is (is / are) very serious.
7. The committee decides (decide / decides) when to adjourn.
8. Our team is (is / are) the best.
9. Everybody enjoys (enjoy / enjoys) a good song.
10. Either of these is (is / are) suitable.

**B. Correct the following passage.**

Where does the deer and the antelope play? One place is Yellowstone National Park. It were created in 1872. Parts of the park is in Wyoming, Montana and Idaho. The park are a safe place for many animals. Bears, moose, buffalo, deer and antelope lives there. Beavers, otters, fish and eagles also enjoys the park. For them, Yellowstone be 'home sweet home.'

Where do the deer and the antelope play? The place is Yellowstone National Park. It was created in 1847. Parts of park are in Wyoming, Montana and Idaho. The park is a safe place for many animals. Bears, moose, buffalo, deer and antelope live there. Beavers, otters, fish and eagles also enjoy the park. For them, Yellowstone is 'home sweet home'.

**WRITING****Biographical Sketch**

**Write a biographical sketch on the author in not more than 80-100 words based on the information given below.**

Page: 82

Name	Arthur C. Clarke
Pen names	Charles Willis, E.G.O' Brien
Birth	16 Dec 1917, England
Career	Novelist, Television host, inventor and film screen writer.
Genre	Science Fiction, Television series, film screen play
Awards and Honours	1961, Kalinga Prize - an award given by UNESCO for popularising science Hugo and Nebula Awards Chairman of the Interplanetary Society Highest Civil Honour of Sri Lanka – 'Sri Lankabhimanya 2005'
Titles	Clarke, Robert Heinlein and Isaac Asimov – 'Big Three' of Science Fiction 'The Prophet of the Space Age'
Famous Works	Childhood's End 2001: A Space Odyssey Rendezvous with Rama

Arthur C. Clarke wrote under his pen names Charles Wills and E.G.O' Brain. He was born on 16th December 1917 in England. He played different roles in literature, as a novelist, television host, inventor and film screen writer. He wrote different genres like science fiction, television series and film screen play. He received many awards and honours. In 1961 he received Kalinga Prize, an award given by UNESCO for popularising science. Other awards are Hugo and Nebula awards. He was the chairman of the Interplanetary Society. He received the highest civil honour of Sri Lanka, 'Sri Lankabhimanya 2005' Clarke, Robert Heinlein and Isaac Asimov are called 'Big Three' of Science Fiction. He is also called 'The Prophet of the Space Age.' His famous works are Childhood's End, 2001: A Space Odyssey and Rendezvous with Rana.

### Report Writing

- a. **You have recently attended a seminar on 'Science and Literature' in which writers presented papers on Science Fiction and Literature and focused on the creativity of young writers. Write a short report about it for a leading newspaper in about 100-120 words.**

Page: 84

#### A report on a seminar on Science and Literature

A seminar was conducted on 11th June 2018 by the Science Forum of Chennai sponsored by the Writer's Club. It was well attended by many known people from all over India. It was inaugurated by Tamil Nadu Science Forum President Dr. Subarayan. He welcomed all those who were ready to present papers in the seminar and asked the other participants to get the maximum benefit from the presentations. In total eighty seven papers were selected from more than 500 papers submitted. All the papers pertained to the topic Science Fiction and Literature. In the modern era many writers are highly imaginative to write science fiction. Though it is an oxymoron for many years many writers are attempting to write fiction based on certain scientific concepts. So it has become a separate genre in literature. This has helped many scientists to try to materialise some ideas given by the writers. Young writers are very creative in this regard. The seminar focused on the creative mind of the writers. It was a very successful seminar.

- b. **You are the School Pupil Leader. Your school organised an Inter-School Sports event at Nehru Stadium. Write a report on the special events conducted in 100-120 words for the school souvenir.**

#### A report on Inter-school Sports Event

My school Balan Memorial Higher Secondary School conducted an Inter-School Sports event on 15th August 2018 in Nehru Stadium. The schools of Chennai region participated in it. All the events were conducted in three levels – junior, senior and super senior. Nearly 70 schools participated in it. We had track and field events and few games. We had 100m, 200m and 400m long jump, high jump, triple jump, relay and shot put. In the games side there were volleyball, football, badminton and cricket (15 overs). It started with the flag hoisting and inauguration function. School children gave programme in dancing and martial arts. Our District Collector was the chief guest. After two hours of programme the sports items were started in one place and games were started in another place. We had very tough competition in most of the items. All the programmes came to an end on 16th forenoon. Afternoon was left for the prize distribution and valedictory function. We were very happy that our school got the championship cup.

# LINES WRITTEN IN EARLY SPRING

William Wordsworth

## About the Author

Author	: William Wordsworth
Born	: 7th April, 1770 - England.
Education	: • Howkshead Grammar School • Cambridge University
Famous Works	: • Tintern Abbey • The Prelude • Lucy • Solitary Reaper • Lyrical Ballads
Honour	: England's Poet - laureate, 1843.
Speciality	: Romanticism
Died	: 23rd April 1850.



## Warm Up

Page: 85

**Do you go for leisurely walk? If you are a city dweller what or who would you expect to see on your way?**

Yes, I go for a leisurely walk. I expect my friends who go to market to buy fresh vegetables. It would be pleasant to watch the women sweeping the ground, spilling water and drawing attractive kolam with colour powders. Some elderly people can be seen watering their garden. On the way there are three temples and I watch the priests ringing the bells and chanting the slogans.

**If you go to a village what scenes would you observe?**

In the village I can see the milkman going to the doors and selling milk. Farmers can be seen carrying ploughs on their shoulders and going to their fields. I would see some sparrows chirruping and pigeons fluttering about. The shepherd singing some folk songs drives the cattle with a stick tapping on the ground. I would observe the cows grazing on the way.

## SUMMARY

'Lines Written in Early Spring' has been written by Wordsworth, the famous English Romantic poet. He is popularly known as Nature Poet. All his themes are closely connected with nature. In this poem the speaker tells that while sitting reclined on a woodland grove, his mind is filled with several thoughts. While he finds solace in the nature's beauty, the same beauty also fills his mind with despair. The speaker appreciates the nature for her god like abilities of linking a human soul to herself but he also feels grief while thinking about how cruelly man has separated himself from Mother Nature. The speaker is highly appreciative of the nature's beauty. He finds delight in the green bowers and has faith that the beautiful flowers enjoy every ounce of the air they breathe, and they are thankful for living beside nature. The speaker observes the birds which sing and hop around him and he is in awe of these creatures. Though the speaker does not understand their language and ways, he does recognize that the birds are creating all these movements out of sheer pleasure and joy. The breeze flowing is sweet and light, the twigs are spreading out as if to catch the sweet air and all the speaker can do is gather pleasure in their existence. The speaker questions that if this is heaven and this is the holy plan of nature then what has man made of man that is himself and his kind, by separating from such joy.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 86

grove	–	a small area of land with a group of trees
sate	–	old-fashioned spelling for sat
recline	–	lean back in a position of rest
grieve	–	mourn or to feel intense sorrow
primrose	–	a wild plant with yellow flowers
tufts	–	bunches
bower	–	a pleasant shady place under trees
periwinkle	–	a trailing plant with large blue flowers
wreaths	–	an arrangement of flowers in the shape of a circle
lament	–	to express sorrow or unhappiness about something

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

## 1. Find the words from the poem that convey the following ideas.

- |   |   |               |
|---|---|---------------|
| a. connected together   | – | blended       |
| b. spread over the surface of the ground in a straggling manner | – | trailed       |
| c. make out or understand                                       | – | measure       |
| d. slender woody shoots growing from branches or stems of trees | – | budding twigs |

## 2. Complete the summary of the poem by filling in the blanks with the words given below.

The poet, in a relaxed state of mind, is sitting in a (1) **grave**. He reflects on how his mood brings (2) **pleasant** thoughts, which are inevitably followed by (3) **sorrowful** ones. He feels connected to all of nature, and senses an inherent joy in all (4) **creations**. He has faith in the fact that all the primroses and periwinkles around him (5) **savour** the air they breathe. He feels that every bird in the grove moves with (6) **ecstasy**. As the twigs catch the breezy air, they do so with the same pleasure (7) **pervading** all life on earth. This joy of nature seems to be heaven-sent. Nature's holy plan is to offer joy and peace to all forms of life on earth. The poet's pleasant train of thought slowly leads to the sad reflection of how mankind alone has wrought sorrow and (8) **suffering** upon itself. He firmly believes that man is meant to spend his days blissfully taking part in the vitality and joy surrounding him in (9) **abundance**. He therefore concludes rhetorically, emphasizing that he has good reason to (10) **lament** the distress, man unnecessarily brings upon himself.

creations	abundance	savour	pleasant	suffering
grove	lament	pervading	sorrowful	ecstasy

## 3. Read the lines given below and answer the questions that follow.

Page: 87

(i) *'And it's my faith that every flower  
Enjoys the air it breaths .....*

## a) What is the poet's faith?

The poet's faith is that every flower enjoys its life.

## b) What trait of Nature do we see here?

We see the happiness of Nature here.

- ii) *'And I must think, do all I can,  
That there was pleasure there.....'*
- a) **What did the poet notice about the twigs?**  
The twigs try to catch the breezy air.
- b) **What was the poet's thought about them?**  
The poet's thought was that they were all very happy.
- iii) *'If this belief from heaven be sent  
If such be Nature's holy plan'*
- a) **What does 'heaven' refer to?**  
'Heaven' refers to God.
- b) **Why does the poet call it 'holy'?**  
As this is the plan of God, he calls it 'holy'.

### ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Read the lines given below and answer the questions that follow.

1. *'I heard a thousand blended notes  
While in a grove I sat reclined'.*
- a) **Where did the poet sit?**  
The poet sat in a grove.
- b) **What did he hear?**  
He heard the music created by nature and birds.
2. *'To her fair works did Nature link  
The human soul that through me ran'*
- a) **Whose fair work does the poet talk about?**  
The poet talks about the fair work of nature.
- b) **What is the fair work?**  
The fair work is that Nature links itself to the human soul.
3. *'But the least motion which they made  
It seem'd a thrill of pleasure'*
- a) **Whom does the term 'they' refer to?**  
The term 'they' refers to the birds.
- b) **What was the pleasure?**  
The least movement of the birds seemed to be a pleasure.

### TEXTUAL EXERCISES

4. Explain the following lines with reference to the context in about four to five sentences each.

- i) *'In that sweet mood when pleasant thoughts  
Bring sad thoughts to the mind'.*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' written by Wordsworth.

**Explanation :**

In an early spring, Wordsworth sat in a small woodland grove and listened to the birdsong around him. The birds' songs promoted happy thoughts in his mind. But the same happy thoughts brought some sadness to him. Man did not treat Nature well though it created a strong connection with Him. So he feels sad.

- ii) *'The birds around me hopp'd and play'd,  
Their thoughts I cannot measure'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' written by Wordsworth.

**Explanation :**

He felt sorry to know the reality of Man in this world. Nature brings happiness to the soul of man which is connected to Nature. But Man has not done anything good to mankind and Nature. Wordsworth sat in a small woodland grove and listened to the birdsong around him. The birds seemed to be happily jumping and playing around him but he could not understand what they had in their mind.

- iii) *'Have I not reason to lament  
What Man has made of Man?'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' written by Wordsworth.

**Explanation :**

The poet thinks that mankind alone has caused sorrow to himself. Actually man is meant to spend his days happily. So he laments the sufferings of the man. The poet's soul is lamenting the miseries of human.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

**Explain the following lines with reference to the context.**

1. *'And much it grieved my heart to think  
What Man has made of Man'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' written by Wordsworth.

**Explanation :**

Wordsworth sat in a small woodland grove and listened to the birdsong around him. But although happy thoughts were prompted by the birdsong, his mind was unhappy over certain things. Nature made a strong connection between itself and the soul of mankind, but man repaid the favour by making a mess of his relations with his fellow men.

2. *'The budding twigs spread out their fan  
To catch the breezy air'*

**Reference :**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' written by Wordsworth.

**Explanation :**

Wordsworth admires the flowers – the primrose, the blue of the periwinkle, the greenness of the woodland area in which he sits – and the birds which 'hopped and played' around him happily. The twigs spread everywhere to get the touch of the breezy air. The birds, and the twigs on the trees, seem to exist in a world of pleasure.

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

5. Read the following sets of lines and identify the figures of speech used in each extract.

- a) *'To her fair works did Nature link'  
'The human soul that through me ran .....*  
Personification.
- b) *'And it's my faith that every flower .....*  
*Enjoys the air it breathes*  
Personification.
- c) *What Man has made of Man?*  
Alliteration, Rhetorical Question.

B. Read the poem once again. Identify the rhyme scheme and pick out the rhyming pairs of words.

### Rhyme scheme - ab ab

notes - thoughts	bower - flower	fan - can
reclined - mind	wreaths - breathes	air - there
link - think	play'd - made	sent - lament
ran - man	measure - pleasure	plan - man

are the rhyming words found in the poem.

6. Based on your reading of the poem, answer the following questions in a sentence or two each.

- a. **How does the poet feel while enjoying the beauty of Nature?**  
The poet feels happy and sad while enjoying the beauty of Nature.
- b. **Does Nature affect a person's thoughts and feelings? Explain**  
Nature affects a person's thoughts and feeling. He feels happy to be in the midst of plants and flowers. Nature is connected to the soul of Man.
- c. **How do people bring grief and sorrow to one another?**  
People do not think about the welfare of the others. They plan to destroy others. Thus people bring grief and sorrow to one another.
- d. **Why does the poet think that the birds were happy?**  
Birds were jumping and playing around him. So the poet thinks that birds were happy.
- e. **The poet finds joy in various objects of Nature. Explain**  
The poet sits in a grove which is full of plants. Then he finds joy in different flowers. He enjoys looking at the birds which are jumping and playing.
- f. **Bring out the poet's thoughts, while comparing Nature with human behaviour.**  
Nature gives its best to the human beings but Man does not treat Nature well. He is responsible for the destruction of Nature and Man.

7. Complete the following sentences by choosing the best options.

- a. The poet experiences sadness because \_\_\_\_\_.
- the blended notes are jarring
  - Nature is filled with negativity

- iii) he is worried about the destruction caused to Nature  
iv) natural calamities occur frequently
- b. The poem is set in a \_\_\_\_\_.  
i) city                      ii) village                      iii) grove                      iv) park
- c. The poem speaks of \_\_\_\_\_.  
i) Man's plan to shape destiny  
ii) Man seeking pleasure and riches  
iii) Man indulging in wars and acts of destruction  
iv) Man's fear of Nature

**8. Answer in a paragraph about 100 – 150 words.**

Page: 88

**Do you think the poet wants to say that man is unhappy because he has lost his link with nature and forgotten how to enjoy nature or because man is cruel to other men?**

Wordsworth in his poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' brings out the idea that Nature is connected to Man's soul. If Man is close with Nature he will find happiness irrespective of whatever happens. Wordsworth sits in a small woodland grove and listens to the birdsong around him. But although happy thoughts are prompted by the birdsong, the same happy thoughts bring sadness to the poet. The sad thought has come to him because Man is not taking care of his fellow beings and nature. Every plant and flower feels happy and it spreads happiness around him. The birds are jumping and playing around him. Though he cannot understand what they think, he is sure that they are showing their happiness. The birds, and the twigs on the trees, seem to exist in a world of pleasure. Nature's plan is to make Man happy but because of Man's destructive nature he brings unhappiness to the world. He clearly says that man is cruel to other men because he is losing his link with nature.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH**

**Answer in a paragraph about 100 – 150 words.**

**1. According to Wordsworth Man spoils nature and his fellow being. Discuss.**

Wordsworth in his poem 'Lines Written in Early Spring' brings out the idea that Nature is connected to Man's soul. If Man is close with Nature he will find happiness wherever he is. The speaker says that while sitting in a grove his mind is filled with both pleasant and sad thoughts. He could associate himself with Nature. But he feels distressed at the fact that human beings are exploiting Nature. The atmosphere around is calm and pleasant with flowers in the sweet bower. The air is breezy and everything seems to be happy. When Nature desires such peace it is only the irresponsible act of human beings that brings sorrow to other human beings and to Nature.

**9. LISTENING ACTIVITY**

**Some phrases have been left out in the poem below. First read the poem. Then fill in the missing words on listening to the reading or recording of it in full. You may listen again if required.**

**To Autumn**

O Autumn, laden with fruit, and stained  
With the blood of the grape, pass not, but sit  
Beneath my shady roof, there thou mayest rest,

And tune the jolly voice to my fresh pipe,  
 And all the daughters of the year shall dance!  
 Sing now the lusty song of fruits and flowers.  
 "The narrow bud opens her beauties to  
 The sun, and love runs in her thrilling veins;  
 Blossoms hang round the brows of Morning and  
 Flourish down the bright cheek of modest Eve,  
 Till clust'ring Summer breaks forth into singing,  
 And feather'd clouds strew flowers round her head.  
 The spirit of the air live in the smells  
 Of fruit; and joy, with pinions light roves round  
 The gardens, or sits singing in the trees,"  
 Thus sang the jolly Autumn as he sat,  
 Then rose, girded himself, and o'er the bleak  
 Hills fled from our sight; but let his golden load.

10.

**SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

Page: 89

- a. **What scene in nature gives you pleasure? Talk for a minute describing a natural scene that gave you a lot of joy. What did you see, hear, smell or feel that gave you joy?**

I went to my village during my summer holidays. As I was walking one day, I came to a place where a small stream was running. I went closer to that and I was happy to see small and big fish swimming here and there. Some were of different colours. Near the stream there was a grove with many trees which gave good shade to sit and enjoy. There I saw many birds twittering and dancing and they seemed to enjoy the very life they have. It was a very pleasant experience for me.

- b. **Work in groups of 4–6. Discuss how you would preserve the environment and protect Nature. One or two representatives may share their ideas with the class.**

**Representative A:**

We must nurture nature. Because it maintains and sustains ecological balance. Mother Nature with fauna and flora fills our world with immense happiness. Immeasurable joy radiates when we come into communion with nature. It will be a matter of surprise if I say that nature understands our moods and thoughts. When a gardener takes his scythe to trim the plants, they shrink. At the same time, when he pours water, the plants spread their wings like birds with exuberance and enthusiasm. So, we must protect Nature to make this world reign luster, luminance, wonder and beauty.

**Representative B:**

We must preserve our environment and make it pollution-free. Our environment is the rock-solid basis on which the edifice of our existence depends. Once it develops cracks, it will collapse like a pack of cards. So it is mandatory that we preserve our environment at any cost. The need of the hour is afforestation. Let us plant ten saplings for every tree cut. We should create awareness among the people about the risks caused to environment by our greed and selfishness. Our motto should be 'Make our environment clean and green'. Old vehicles that emit gases and smoke should be banned. We must preserve water bodies and prevent chemicals and sewage from mixing with lakes and rivers. Fridge, electrical bulbs and A/cs should be used sparingly. Renewing, recycling and reusing should be given due priority. Preserving environment is the only beautiful gift we can hand over to the next generation.

**11. Answer the following in a paragraph of 100 - 150 words each.****a. 'Nature can nurture'. Describe how this process happens.**

Nurture means to help in the development or feed and take care of a child. Nature is a comprehensive term which covers many things. It can give different meanings in different situations. To Wordsworth, Nature means anything which is not made by man. Nature can be plants, birds, fish and even wild animals. The question is whether nature can nurture or help in the growth. An adult man's development is not merely on food but with many other things around him. Of course nature is one among them. Nature gives a peace of mind and it gives a chance for the positive growth of man. Nature gives a lot of lessons to man how to behave in a society without hypocrisy.

**b. When humanity fails to live in harmony with Nature, its effects are felt around the world. Why and how?**

Man is meant to live in harmony with Nature. Nature is the creation of God for the benefit of Man. It does not mean he has the right to trouble nature or destroy it. Nature has its own course. If it is disturbed it will create trouble around us. Nature has given its own protection. But now a days Man has become very greedy and he has destroyed nature for his selfish ends. Because of this Ozone layer is punctured and people suffer from global warming. Many natural calamities like tsunami, earthquake and flood are created due to the destruction of nature. Man has started destroying forests and it affects the rain fall. People suffer due to lack of water. This in turn affects agriculture which is the basic need of human beings. Sociologists say that the worst is yet to come. All these problems occur to humanity because we fail to live in harmony with Nature.

**c. Write a letter to the Councillor of your Ward, explaining why a park is necessary in your locality.**

From

Sunderam P,  
227, Nehru Colony,  
Kannigapuram,  
Salem – 636 018.

Date : 13<sup>th</sup> June 2019

To

The Councillor,  
Ward 32,  
Salem Municipality,  
Salem – 636 001.

Sir,

Subject: Need for a park in our locality regarding.

I am a resident of Nehru Colony which falls in your Ward. There are nearly 300 families in this colony with many school-going children and some senior citizens. The colony is well planned and well laid out but it does not have a park for the children to play safely and a walking path for the adults. Now most of the time children are playing on the streets and it leads to accidents. The senior citizens do not have any safe place to have their morning and evening walk. So on behalf of the residents of Nehru colony I request you to create a park in our locality for the larger interests of children and old people.

Thanking you and awaiting a positive step from you,

Yours faithfully,  
Sunderam.

\*\*◆◆\*\*

UNIT

3

THE FIRST PATIENT

CV Burgess

SUPPLEMENTARY

About the Author

Author : Christopher Victor Burgess (C.V Burgess)  
 Famous Works : • Short plays for Large classes • Teach Yourself Speech Training  
 • Classroom Play house Verse in Action  
 Speciality : Situational Comedy



Warm Up

Page: 90

Given below is a list of tools and equipment. Associate them with the appropriate profession and complete the table.

plough hammer oven thermometer voltmeter wood chisel seed drill voltage detector cutting boards stone picker spatula cultivator nail puller wire strippers framing square fork flashlight			
Farmer	Carpenter	Electrician	Chef
plough, seed, cultivator.	hammer, wood, chisel, drill, cutting, boards, nail, puller, framing, square.	voltmetre, voltage, detector, wire, strippers, flashlight.	oven, fork, spatula.

SUMMARY

The short play 'The First Patient' has been written by C V Burgess. His situational humour intensifies the emotions of the characters in the play. This play brings out humour in a dentist's clinic. The unexpected incidents create emotion in the readers and finally it leads to humour. The characters in the play are 8 men, 8 women, a nurse, a little girl, a little boy and a dentist.

All are waiting for the dentist's arrival. Woman 5 spends her time by showing her photographs to others who are not that much interested to see them. Then enters the nurse. By the time a little girl Dorothea shows her unwillingness to see the dentist but her mother tries to rule over her. Then the dentist comes and calls the first patient. The first patient is Joe. He enters the surgery and his wife waits outside. Others are talking about the efficiency of the dentist. At the time woman 8 enters with a boy. He shows his courage in facing the dentist.

Then the nurse comes out of the surgery and re-enters with a large hammer. Now the people outside have their own imagination of the use of the hammer inside the surgery. Joe's wife prays that it should not be used on Joe. Now the sound of hammering is heard and Joe's wife is frightened that it is being used on him. Others are trying to pacify her saying that the dentist knows what to do. Again the nurse comes out of the surgery and re-enters with a pair of pliers. Now Joe's wife feels that Joe is suffering with pain from the use of all these implements. She starts weeping and others are calming her. Now a metallic screech is heard and again Joe's wife is agitated.

In the mean time two little children are fighting for a magazine and their mothers are pulling them back. Again the metallic screech is heard and the boy is afraid to go to the surgery. He says he has no pain

and he was only joking. So his mother decides to take him to school and she leaves with the boy. Again the hammering is heard and the nurse comes out of the surgery. The doctor shouts to the nurse from the surgery to hurry; otherwise they cannot get this thing shifted. All the people start going away one by one. Joe's wife is sobbing. Then Joe comes out of the surgery and asks his wife why she is crying. He says nothing has happened to him and he has taken one more appointment from the dentist for this evening.

Then he explains that the noise is because of the dentist's trial to open his tool box. He has misplaced the key. By then the dentist comes inside with the key saying that it was under the telephone directory. Now only Woman 5 who has been busy showing her photographs to others is the patient waiting. She wonders how the long queue has moved so quickly. She goes inside the surgery with the nurse.


**GLOSSARY**

Page: 99

groaning	–	crying in pain
dreadful	–	extremely bad
ice-lollies	–	flavoured ice or ice cream on a stick
weeny tug	–	small pull
gas	–	anesthesia
scream	–	a very funny thing
ferrying	–	carrying
queer	–	strange
writhing	–	twisting the body from side to side
agony	–	severe pain
sulking	–	being sad and silent
blurred	–	hazy, not clear


**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 99

**1. Complete the summary of the play choosing the appropriate words from the list given below.**

A number of patients wait at the (1) waiting room of a dentist's clinic. Everybody is tensed at the thought of painful (2) tooth being extracted. One of the women is bent on showing everyone her (3) photographs. After the arrival of the dentist, Joe, the first (4) patient is called in. Sometime later, the nurse comes out and goes in with a (5) hammer. Everyone is (6) frightened at this, imagining Joe is being subjected to a lot of hammering in the process of his tooth being pulled out. Once again the nurse comes out to fetch a large pair of (7) pliers and later on she takes in a (8) hacksaw. A little boy confesses that he pretended to have (9) toothache because he did not wish to go to school. The loud (10) sawing and screeching from within the room makes everyone leave the (11) clinic, one by one. Finally there are only two women in the waiting room, one of them being Joe's wife. She weeps (12) worried about her husband. But Joe comes out and explains that he has shifted his (13) appointment to the evening and has been given some pills for the pain. After they leave, the dentist comes out and locates the key of his tool (14) cabinet. He has been trying to open it using the hammer, the pliers and the hacksaw only in vain. The women with the photographs is surprised to see that the (15) queue had moved quickly and she is the next patient to go in.

hammer	patient	hacksaw	cabinet	frightened	queue	worried	waiting room
pliers	tooth	photographs	clinic	toothache	sawing	appointment	

2. Based on your understanding of the play, complete the Graphic Organiser (GO) suitably.

Page: 100

**Settings:**

waiting room of a dentist and some men and women are sitting here

**Characters:**

Men 1 – 8

Women 1 – 8

**Title** : The First Patient

**Author** : C.S. Burgess

**Climax:**

The dentist comes with the key of his tool cabinet.

**Humorous elements:**

- ⌚ Woman 5 showing the photographs to others.
- ⌚ The nurse carrying hammer, pliers and hacksaw inside the surgery.
- ⌚ The dentist carries the key of his cabinet.

3. Based on your understanding of the play, answer the following questions in about three or four sentences each.

a) **Who were the patients waiting for?**

The patients were waiting for the dentist.

b) **How did the woman 5 spend her time in the waiting hall?**

Woman 5 had a bunch of photographs of hers which she had taken during her holidays. She spent her time by showing the photographs to others.

c) **How did the other Woman react to Woman 5?**

The other Woman did not show much interest to see her photographs.

d) **Are children afraid of visiting the dentist? Give reasons.**

Children are afraid of visiting the dentist. They are afraid of the pain they may undergo when the dentist treats their teeth.

e) **What were the strange instruments the nurse carried to the surgery? How did the waiting patients interpret her act?**

The nurse carried a hammer, a pair of pliers and a hacksaw. The waiting patients interpreted that the dentist was using those instruments on the patient Joe.

f) **Bring out the people's reaction to the noises from the surgery.**

The waiting people heard the hammering and the screeching noise from the surgery. Woman 1, Joe's wife thought that the dentist was using the instruments on her husband and the noises were coming from the use of those instruments. So she was trying to go inside. Woman 2 pulled her back and tried to pacify her. Man 4 was confident that the dentist knew how to use the instruments.

g) **Why did they sympathise with the first patient?**

The first patient was Joe. When he was inside, the nurse carried a hammer, a pair of pliers and a hacksaw. Those who were waiting in the waiting room thought that the dentist was using the instruments on the first patient. So they sympathised with the first patient.

h) **Why was Woman 1 panic more than the others?**

Woman 1 was more panic than the others because she was the wife of Joe who was inside the surgery. She thought her husband was in great pain.

**i) Woman 5 was not aware of what was happening. Why?**

Woman 5 was not aware of what was happening because she was only interested in showing her photographs to others.

**j) How did Woman 5 move ahead in the waiting list of patients?**

The patients were listening to the hammering and screeching noises from the surgery. They felt scared. Moreover it was getting late as the dentist was trying to find out his key to the tool cabinet. The patients lost their patience and they left one by one. Woman 5 was unaware of that because she was interested in showing her photographs to others. Thus she moved ahead in the waiting list.

**k) Why do patients leave the clinic without meeting the dentist?**

The patients were listening to the hammering and screeching noises from the surgery. They felt scared. Moreover it was getting late as the dentist was trying to find out his key to the tool cabinet. The patients lost their patience and they left one by one.

**l) What had really happened in the dentist's room?**

The dentist had lost his key to the tool cabinet. So he could not open the cabinet. In order to open the tool cabinet he used the hammer, the pliers and the hacksaw. The hammering and screeching noises came from the surgery because the dentist was trying to open the tool cabinet with those instruments.

**VOCABULARY**

**4. Read the descriptions given under Column A and match them with their correct -ist words describing specialists in the various fields of medicine given under Column B.** Page: 101

	A	B	Answer
1.	One who specialises in lung problem	Gynecologist	Pulmonologist
2.	One who specialises in skin problem	Gastroenterologist	Dermatologist
3.	One who treats diseases specific to women	Dermatologist	Gynecologist
4.	One who treats kidney	Neurologist	Nephrologist
5.	One who treats diseases and disorders of the nervous system	Pulmonologist	Neurologist
6.	One who treats stomach disorders	Cardiologist	Gastroenterologist
7.	One who treats vision problems	Nephrologist	Ophthalmologist
8.	One who specialises in critical infants	Otolaryngologi	Neonatologist
9.	One who treats heart problems	Ophthalmologist	Cardiologist
10.	One who treats problems of ear, nose, tongue	Neonatologist	Otolaryngologist

**LISTENING**

**Read the following sentences. Now listen to the talk on the importance of humour and laughter for good physical and mental health. You may listen to the text again if required, to help you choose the correct option.**

- i) Humour has the power to motivate and \_\_\_\_\_ stress and pain.  
 a) improve                      b) intensify                      c) reduce                      d) increase
- ii) It seems generally \_\_\_\_\_ that our bodies respond in a positive way to a hearty laugh.  
 a) accepted                      b) denied                      c) improved                      d) confused

- iii) The \_\_\_\_\_ is stocked with books, comics, funny posters, audiotapes and videos.  
 a) waiting room                      b) **humour room**                      c) ICU                      d) reception
- iv) One can plan to use humour yet rely on \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities to employ it.  
 a) late                      b) better                      c) future                      d) **spontaneous**
- v) Humour is called a way of \_\_\_\_\_ not a part of living.  
 a) **living**                      b) playing                      c) nourishing                      d) developing

## SPEAKING

**Complete the dialogue between a patient and doctor with ten sets of utterances.**

- Doctor : Good evening.  
 Patient : Good evening sir.  
 Doctor : What is your problem?  
 Patient : I have fever for two days doctor.  
 Doctor : Do you have body pain?  
 Patient : Yes doctor, some time I couldn't sleep because of body pain.  
 Doctor : Let me check you ..... Yes you have 102° fever. Did you take any medicine?  
 Patient : No doctor. I can't eat well for two days.  
 Doctor : Yes, when you have 102 fever surely you cannot eat.  
 Patient : I think you may give me some medicine for my problem. You see, I have to attend a meeting tomorrow so I should be alright tomorrow.  
 Doctor : Tablets will not give you immediate relief.  
 Patient : So what should I do?  
 Doctor : It is better to have a prick, I mean an injection.  
 Patient : Oh! I am sorry I can't bear the pain.  
 Doctor : Why do you behave like a small baby sir?  
 Patient : Doctor I am sorry. Whatever you say, I am not for injection.  
 Doctor : You see now we have a very thin injection. It will not be painful.  
 Patient : Anyway you will prick me.  
 Doctor : That is true, but it will not be painful. Without injection you cannot get immediate relief.  
 Patient : Ok sir, then go ahead.

**5. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 80 - 100 words each.**

- i) **Based on your understanding of the play, explain how a mistaken understanding of events can lead to confusion. How has the author used this unexpected combination of events in the situation to create humour?**

'The First Patient' by C V Burgess – dentist waiting room – dentist arrives – first patient enters – nurse with hammer, pair of pliers, a hacksaw – patients mistake – dentist tries to open tool cabinet – except one all left

C V Burgess in his play, 'The First Patient' displays a dentist's clinic with some waiting patients. When the dentist arrived, the first patient Joe entered the surgery. After few minutes the nurse carried a hammer inside the surgery. The waiting patients thought that the dentist would use the hammer on Joe. Then she carried a pair of pliers and a hacksaw. The waiting patients were afraid of the dentist and left the clinic one by one. Then it was clear that they had a mistaken understanding of the situation. The dentist lost his key to his tool cabinet so he had used all the instruments to open

the cabinet. But he could succeed. All the patients except one left the clinic so the dentist lost his one day business.

**ii) Have you ever found yourself in such a situation? Discuss in groups and act out such a situation.**

Once I accompanied my sister to a private clinic. She was suffering from a severe cold. As we were asked to sit in the waiting-room, the doctor arrived. The nurse called the first patient and took him into the consultation room. Minutes ticked by, and my sister was actually the second to see the doctor. We were at the end of our tether because the first person had not come out and more than one hour was over. I pestered the nurse with enquiry after enquiry. She lost her cool and moved to the other doctor's surgery. Being curiosity-stricken, I opened the door ajar only to find that both the patient and the doctor were not in the room. I felt dazed, and approached the nurse to know what was happening. The nurse told me very coolly that both of them made their exit through the other door because they wanted to watch the thrilling final world cup soccer match.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

**Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 80 - 100 words each.**

**1. Why was the wife of the first patient in panic?**

The short play 'The First Patient' was written by C V Burgess. His situational humour intensifies the emotions of the characters in the play. This play brings out humour from a dentist's clinic. All are waiting for the dentist's arrival. When the dentist comes he calls the first patient. The first patient is Joe. He enters the surgery and his wife waits outside. Others are talking about the efficiency of the dentist. Then the nurse comes out of the surgery and reenters with a large hammer. Now the people outside have their own imagination of the use the hammer inside the surgery. Joe's wife prays that it should not be used on Joe. Now the sound of hammering is heard and Joe's wife is frightened that it is going to be used on him. Again the nurse comes out of the surgery and reenters with a pair of pliers. Now Joe's wife feels that Joe is suffering pain from the use of all these implements. So she was in panic. But then she comes to know the implement have been used to open the tool box of the dentist and nothing has been done on her husband.

**2. Why did,all the patients except one leave the dentist's clinic?**

The short play 'The First Patient' was written by C V Burgess. All are waiting for the dentist's arrival. Woman 5 spends her time by showing her photographs to others who are not that much interested to see them. When the dentist comes he calls the first patient. The first patient Joe enters the surgery and his wife waits outside. Then the nurse comes out of the surgery and reenters with a large hammer. Now the people outside have their own imagination of the use the hammer inside the surgery. Joe's wife prays that it should not be used on Joe. Now the sound of hammering is heard and Joe's wife is frightened that it is being used on him. Again the nurse comes out of the surgery and re-enters with a pair of pliers. The boy who has come with his mother is afraid of going to surgery. He says he has no pain and he was only joking. So his mother decides to take him to school and she leaves with the boy. Again the hammering is heard. By the time all the people start going away one by one. It is because the patients are frightened of the horrible sound from the surgery that they leave the room.

UNIT

3

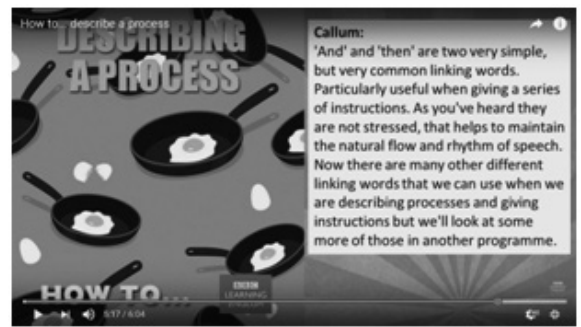
ICT CORNER

DESCRIBING PROCESS

1.



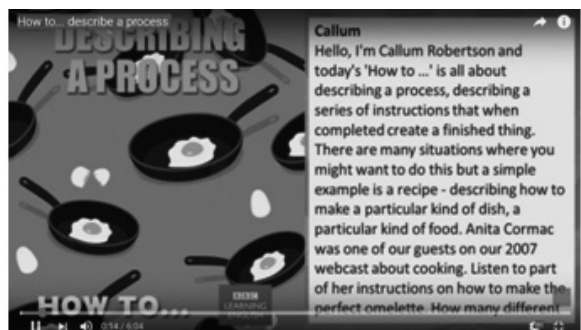
2.



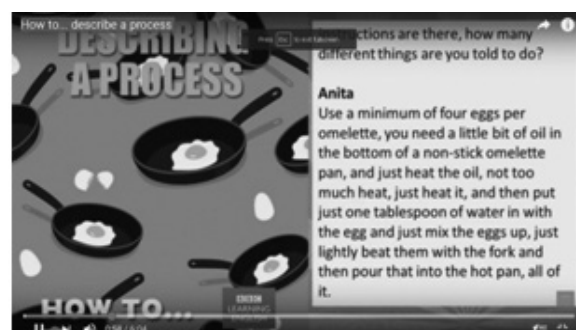
3.



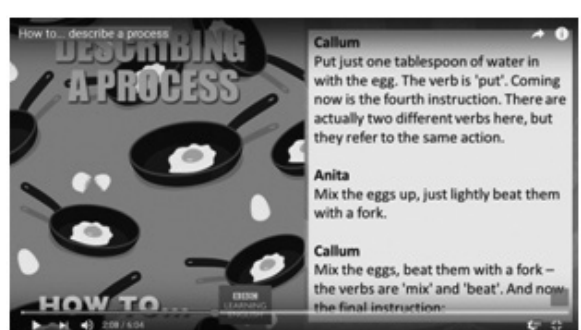
4.



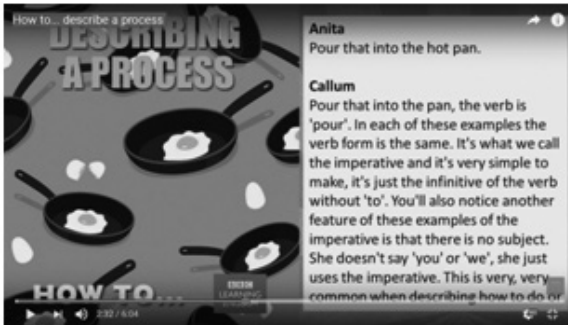
5.



6.



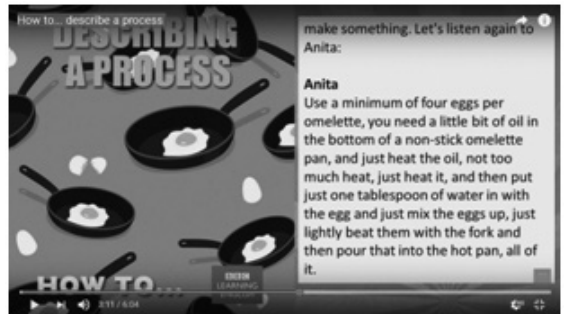
7.



**Anita**  
Pour that into the hot pan.

**Callum**  
Pour that into the pan, the verb is 'pour'. In each of these examples the verb form is the same. It's what we call the imperative and it's very simple to make, it's just the infinitive of the verb without 'to'. You'll also notice another feature of these examples of the imperative is that there is no subject. She doesn't say 'you' or 'we', she just uses the imperative. This is very, very common when describing how to do...

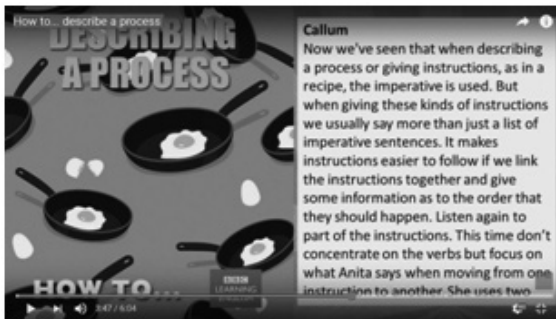
8.



make something. Let's listen again to Anita:

**Anita**  
Use a minimum of four eggs per omelette, you need a little bit of oil in the bottom of a non-stick omelette pan, and just heat the oil, not too much heat, just heat it, and then put just one tablespoon of water in with the egg and just mix the eggs up, just lightly beat them with the fork and then pour that into the hot pan, all of it.

9.



**Callum**  
Now we've seen that when describing a process or giving instructions, as in a recipe, the imperative is used. But when giving these kinds of instructions we usually say more than just a list of imperative sentences. It makes instructions easier to follow if we link the instructions together and give some information as to the order that they should happen. Listen again to part of the instructions. This time don't concentrate on the verbs but focus on what Anita says when moving from one instruction to another. She uses two...

10.

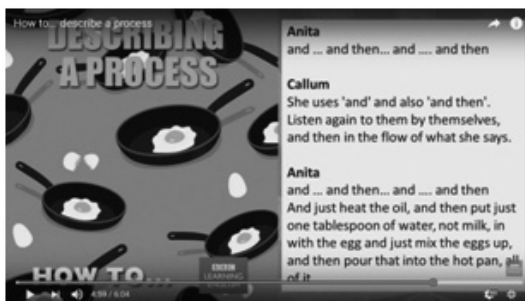


different linking words, what are they?

**Anita**  
And just heat the oil, and then put just one tablespoon of water, not milk, in with the egg and just mix the eggs up, and then pour that into the hot pan, all of it.

**Callum**  
Did you catch them? They're very quick and not stressed at all, so it's easy to miss them. Here they are by themselves.

11.



**Anita**  
and ... and then... and ... and then

**Callum**  
She uses 'and' and also 'and then'. Listen again to them by themselves, and then in the flow of what she says.

**Anita**  
and ... and then... and ... and then  
And just heat the oil, and then put just one tablespoon of water, not milk, in with the egg and just mix the eggs up, and then pour that into the hot pan, all of it.

## UNIT

## 4

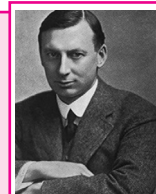
## TIGHT CORNERS

*Edward Verrall Lucas*

## PROSE

**About the Author**

<b>Author</b>	: Edward Verrall Lucas
<b>Born</b>	: 12th June, 1868 - London.
<b>Education</b>	: Walden School
<b>Career</b>	: • Essayist • Playwright • Biographer • Publisher • Poet • Novelist • Short Story Writer • Editor
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • Four and Twenty Toilers (1900) Poems • A Wanderer in Holland (1905) • A Wanderer in London (1906) • One day and another (1909) • Cloud and Silver (1916)
<b>Speciality</b>	: Humour
<b>Died</b>	: 26th June, 1938.

**SUMMARY**

The essay 'Tight Corners' has been written by E V Lucas an English humourist, essayist, playwright and poet. In the humorous essay "Tight Corners", E. V. Lucas points out that tight corners can be both mental as well as physical but the mental tight corners are too difficult to bear.

Once the narrator went with his friend to Christie's, an Art Gallery and an auction-sale hall, where Barbizon pictures were put up. The narrator had neither knowledge about art pictures nor had enough money to participate in the bidding. He had only sixty-three pounds, that too in the bank. He had no securities either. The auction was started and the narrator, not understanding the seriousness, started raising the bid amount marginally. By that time, a Daubigny picture was put on for sale. A rich man bid four thousand guineas for it. As usual, the narrator, just for fun, raised the bid by fifty guineas more.

Lucas thought that someone would raise the bid further. But, to his surprise, nobody else bid after that. The narrator was panic-stricken. No doubt, he unwittingly got into a (mental) tight corner. He could not find ways as how to raise such a huge amount. Sensing the impending danger, his friend had already left the place. Finally, the narrator decided to confess his foolishness to the auctioneer himself and get rid of the critical situation.

Occasionally luck favours someone who is honest. In this case, our narrator is favoured by luck. All of a sudden, the unexpected incident happened. At that time of critical situation, a rich bidder's agent approached the narrator and offered fifty guineas, provided he passed on the art picture to the bidder. The narrator was immensely relieved. He was about to weep in joy. Yet, he had the presence of mind to demand a hundred guineas. When a cheque for that amount was given to him, his joy doubled.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 108

Brittany	–	a region on the coast of North–West France
St. James' Street, King Street	–	well-known commercial streets in London
bloatocrat	–	a fat and rich person of high station – a term coined by E.V. Lucas by blending the words 'bloated' and 'aristocrat'
electrified	–	shocked by something unexpected
crescendo	–	progress towards a climax
congealed	–	thickened as if frozen (through fear etc.)
smothered	–	suppressed
nonchalantly	–	unconcernedly, coolly
glibly	–	smoothly but not sincerely
note of hand	–	promissory note
rectitude	–	honesty, good behaviour
farthing	–	as low as a paise
baize	–	coarse woollen material
guile	–	cunning, deceit
indelible	–	cannot be rubbed out or removed

## MEANINGS

critical	dangerous, grave	comprise	contain
tide	high wave	skin of his teeth	narrow escape
torpedoed	destroyed	persuaded	convinced
tremendous	wonderful (here huge)	bloatocrat	rich
quite	fairly, remarkably	electrified	shocked
rustle	whisper	terrible	horrible, awful
horror	fear	shot his bolt	reached the highest
congealed	frozen	curious	strange
smothered	suppressed	pickle	trouble
remote	far off	stunned	shocked, confused
dazed	confused	sufficiently	enough
nonchalantly	unconcernedly	pondering	thinking
glibly	superficially	speculating	guessing
confessing	accepting	rectified	corrected
outskirts	boundary, outer edge	knot	(here) group
preferred	liked	rammed	pushed, struck
colder feet	fear	rectitude	honesty
guile	cunning	grave	serious
indelibly	cannot be removed		

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

## EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. I was nodding away to the auctioneer like a **bloatocrat**.  
a) rich                      b) poor                      c) clever                      d) foreigner
2. Some well-known dealer who had bought quite a number, **electrified** the room.  
a) current                      b) electricity                      c) shocked                      d) lighted
3. My heart stopped; my blood **congealed**.  
a) flowed                      b) frozen                      c) shown                      d) came out
4. There was no sound but a curious **smothered** noise from my friend.  
a) strange                      b) suppressed                      c) expressed                      d) great
5. Stunned and dazed as I was, I pulled myself together sufficiently to hand over my card **nonchalantly** to the clerk.  
a) interestingly                      b) unconcernedly                      c) happily                      d) immediately
6. Wondering if the moneylenders who talk so **glibly** about 'note of hand' really mean it.  
a) superficially                      d) insincerely                      c) meaningfully                      d) confidently
7. I realised that a career of **rectitude** sometimes has rewards beyond the mere consciousness of Virtue.  
a) dishonesty                      b) pleasure                      c) passion                      d) honesty
8. But how near the surface and ready even in the best of us is worldly **guile!**  
a) honesty                      b) cunningness                      c) happiness                      d) meritorious
9. "It is **indelibly** branded in letters of fire on my heart."  
a) quickly                      b) erasable                      c) temporary                      d) permanently
10. .... those of us whose lives were adventurous enough to **comprise** any.  
a) contain                      b) press                      c) know                      d) praise
11. A fourth was **torpedoed** in the War.  
a) escaping                      b) participating                      c) saved                      d) destroyed
12. There was a **rustle** of excitement.  
a) rustic                      b) whisper                      c) noisy                      d) silence
13. A **terrible** silence followed.  
a) peaceful                      b) long                      c) short                      d) horrible
14. Then I set to **pondering** on the problem what to do next.  
a) closing                      b) opening                      c) thinking                      d) looking



13. \_\_\_\_\_ speculating on the possibility of **confessing** my poverty to one of the Christie's staff.
- a) shouting                      b) admitting                      c) conferring                      d) controlling
14. A genuine mistake of such a kind would have been **rectified** at once.
- a) requested                      b) invited                      c) corrected                      d) promised
15. Naturally I **preferred** to be the last.
- a) ignored                      b) rejected                      c) liked                      d) looked

**OPPOSITES**

critical	×	ordinary	surely	×	doubtfully
tight	×	loose	persuade	×	dissuade
borrow	×	lend	top	×	bottom
higher	×	lower	modestly	×	aggressively
gradual	×	immediate	curious	×	indifferent
remote	×	near	sufficiently	×	deficiently
surface	×	deep			

**ADDITIONAL EXERCISES**

**EXERCISE WITH ANSWER**

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

- The talk was running on the **critical** situation in which we had found ourselves.  
a) ordinary                      b) peculiar                      c) extraordinary                      d) dangerous
- He **persuaded** me to look in at the sale-room.  
a) compelled                      b) dissuaded                      c) implanted                      d) removed
- Although the previous lots had run into four figures they had all been **moderately** started.  
a) aggressively                      b) normally                      c) sensibly                      d) senselessly
- There was no sound but a **curious** smothered noise from my friend.  
a) strange                      b) serious                      c) light                      d) common
- Surely** they can be tighter when they are mental.  
a) truly                      b) often                      c) doubtfully                      d) always

Answers				
1. a	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. c

## SELF EVALUATION

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. The tightest corner I was ever in was at Christie's.  
 a) narrow                      b) broad                      c) weak                      d) loose
2. I had not enough securities to borrow five hundred on.  
 a) get                                      b) receive                      c) lend                      d) loan
3. A red-faced man who had bought quite a number electrified the room.  
 a) moderately                      b) fairly                      c) very few                      d) plenty
4. .... at fifty guineas or hundred guineas with a gradual crescendo to which I had been safely contributing.  
 a) slow                      b) immediate                      c) fast                      d) quick
5. In order to find a remote place in which to lean against the wall and laugh.  
 a) far off                      b) near by                      c) inconvenient                      d) unsafe
6. But how near the surface and ready even in the best of us is worldly guile!  
 a) bottom                      b) top                      c) area                      d) self

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

Page: 105-107

Comprehension questions based on the lesson.

a) Describe the activity that was going on in the sale-room at King Street.

Christie's, the famous auction house was situated at King Street. Auctions for Barbizon pictures were going on in Christie's and people were buying them for thousands of guineas.

b) What can you say about the author's attitude when he high-handedly participated in the auction?

The author wanted to enjoy the fun out of bidding. He thought he could be safe if he bid in the beginning stage.

c) Why was the author sure he would not be caught?

He was adding a few pounds in the beginning and he was hopeful that others would ask for more. So he was sure that he would not be caught.

d) What made the author ignore his friend's warning?

He was very careful to add something in the beginning of the bidding and so far he was safe. He thought he would not be caught so he ignored his friend's warning.

e) How had the author managed the auction without getting involved in the deal?

He was careful to add something in the beginning so that the bid would be raised by others. In this way he was escaping from being caught.

**f) What came as a shock to the author?**

Usually the auctions for pictures started with modest sums. But when a new picture was displayed a dealer made a high bid for four thousand guineas. Without realizing the value of the bid he as usual added fifty more to the bid. Unfortunately the dealer gave up his bid. This was a big shock to the author.

**g) What did the falling of hammer indicate?**

The falling of hammer indicated that the bidding was over.

**h) What made the friend laugh heartily?**

His friend warned him not to play with the bidding. But he went on adding something raising the bidding rate. Finally he was caught. So his friend laughed heartily.

**i) What kind of excuses did the narrator think he could make?**

He thought that he could confess his poverty to one of the staff of Christie's and ask him to put up the picture again for sale.

**j) Why did the friend desert the narrator a second time?**

When the narrator was standing in the queue his friend came to him but he could not control his laughter. So he left the narrator to find a suitable place to laugh.

**k) How does the narrator describe the man who approached him?**

The man who approached him was like a messenger of high gods with green baize apron who spoke in husky Cockney tone.

**l) How does the narrator show presence of mind in the sudden turn of events?**

The man who approached him informed him that the dealer was willing to give him fifty guineas for the picture. But he asked for hundred guineas and got the money. Thus he showed his presence of mind.

**m) The narrator would not forget two things about his friend. What are they?**

One is his laughter when the narrator was caught. Another one is persuading him to get into the auction room.

**1. Choose the most appropriate answer for the following questions.**

Page: 108

a. 'Tight Corner' means a \_\_\_\_\_.

- i. difficult situation      ii. crowded corner      iii. tragic incident      iv. fierce fight

b. Barbizon refers to a \_\_\_\_\_.

- i. kind of paint      ii. type of architecture      iii. region in Britain      iv. French school of painters

c. The narrator visited the sale-room as he \_\_\_\_\_.

- i. wished to see an auction      ii. had a painting to sell  
iii. was persuaded by his friend      iv. wanted to buy a painting

Page: 109

d. The narrator had been a safe contributor at the auction, as \_\_\_\_\_.

- i. there were bidders quoting higher prices      ii. he had a sound financial background  
iii. his friend had lent him money      iv. he did not make any bidding

e. "And I got it". Here 'it' refers to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- i. picture he wanted to buy      ii. money he asked for  
iii. card to participate in the auction      iv. amount he had to pay

**2. Answer the following questions.****a) What is a tight corner? What happens when one finds oneself in a tight corner?**

Tight corner means difficult situation. When one finds oneself in a tight corner one will be afraid and one will try his best to come out of the situation.

**b) What is the difference between a physical and mental tight corner?**

Physical tight corner is the one where a person's safety is in trouble. Mental tight corner is the one where dilemmas and difficult choices are involved.

**c) Why did the narrator visit Christie's?**

The narrator entered the Christie's because he was persuaded by his friend to see the auction inside.

**d) The narrator heard his own voice saying 'and fifty'. What does this suggest?**

The narrator without his knowledge and any understanding of the situation said 'and fifty'.

**e) What was the narrator's financial condition?**

He had only sixty three pounds in his bank. He did not have securities even for five hundred pounds.

**f) The narrator could not pretend to have made a mistake in bidding. Why?**

The narrator had made many other bids before he was caught. Moreover a genuine mistake of this kind must have been rectified in the beginning itself. So he knew that no would believe him.

**g) What could have been the best way for the narrator to get himself out of the tight corner?**

The best way for the narrator to get himself out of the tight corner could have been to confess his mistake to one of the Christie's staff and make him put up the picture again for auction.

**h) Why did the narrator feel he could have welcomed a firing party?**

The narrator did not have enough money to pay for the picture after the auction was over. He could have welcomed a firing party because that would bring his death and he need not be humiliated in front of others.

**i) What was the bidder's offer to the narrator?**

The bidder offered the narrator fifty guineas.

**j) How did the narrator take advantage of the situation?**

When the bidder sent a man to ask the narrator whether he was ready to give the picture for fifty guineas he wanted to take advantage of the situation. He asked for one hundred guineas and he got it for the picture.

**3. Form a meaningful summary of the lesson by rewriting the numbers in the correct sequence.**

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| a) The narrator had only 63 pounds with him and did not know how to manage the situation. | <b>8</b>  |
| b) The narrator thought of all his relations from whom he could borrow.                   | <b>9</b>  |
| c) Unfortunately he had made the highest bid.   | <b>6</b>  |
| d) The narrator entered Christie's as his friend persuaded him to visit the sale-room.    | <b>1</b>  |
| e) Every time someone else made a higher bid and the narrator was not caught.             | <b>3</b>  |
| f) The narrator on a sudden impulse added 50 more guineas to the amount offered.          | <b>5</b>  |
| g) His friend joined him then but left immediately unable to control his laughter.        | <b>12</b> |

- h) He even thought of borrowing from moneylenders and considered the possibilities of confessing the truth to the staff at Christie's. 11
- i) The picture was declared sold to the narrator. 7
- j) After sometime a picture was put up and a bid for 4000 guineas was raised. 4
- k) A sudden stroke of luck befell the narrator when he heard that the gent who had made the bid of 4000 guineas would offer him the additional 50 guineas and buy the picture. 13
- l) The narrator kept the bidding just for fun. 2
- m) The picture was given to the other bidder and the narrator was saved from humiliation. 15
- n) His friend had left the place roaring with laughter at the narrator's predicament. 10
- o) The narrator was quite happy at the offer but demanded 100 guineas instead of the 50. Now there was no need for him to make any payment. 14

**4. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words.**

Page: 110

- a) Narrate the circumstances that led to the narrator getting into a tight corner by his own folly.**

E V Lucas in his essay 'Tight Corners' tries to explain how the mental tight corner is worse than physical tight corner. The narrator entered Christie's, the famous auction house persuaded by his friend. He saw Barbizon pictures were being sold and they were auctioned for very high prizes like four thousand guineas. The narrator did not want to buy any pictures but he simply stood there to see what was going on. He wanted to enjoy fun of taking part in the auction cautiously. Though the pictures were auctioned for huge sum it started very moderately. So he was adding something to the deal in the beginning. It was a safe game. His friend warned him that he might be caught and he asked him to stop his game. But he was sure that he was very cautious and he would never be in trouble. It went on for some time very safely. When a picture was put up for auction a dealer who had bought many other pictures asked for four thousand guineas. Others were excited to hear that. But the narrator without realizing the value of the call simply said, "And fifty". There was a dead silence and the dealer who had kept four thousand guineas was silent and the sale fell on the narrator.

- b) Trace the thought that went on in the mind of the narrator when the picture after picture was put up and sold at the auction.**

E V Lucas in his essay 'Tight Corners' tries to explain how the mental tight corner is worse than the physical tight corner. The narrator entered Christie's, the famous auction house persuaded by his friend. He saw Barbizon pictures were being sold and they were auctioned for very high prizes like four thousand guineas. The narrator did not want to buy any pictures but he simply stood there to see what was going on. He wanted to enjoy fun of taking part in the auction cautiously. His friend warned him that he might be caught and he asked him to stop his game. But he was sure that he was very cautious and he would never be in trouble. But unfortunately he was caught. He had to find four thousand and fifty guineas to buy a picture which he did not want. He was in real trouble. Pictures after pictures were being sold. He did not mind about them. He was trying to get some names of his relatives who would be kind enough to lend him money. He did not get anybody in his mind. He thought it would be good to confess his poverty to the Christie's staff. But he knew that after participating in many other auctions he could not do that. Moreover a genuine mistake of this kind could have been rectified at once.

**c) Explain how the narrator got out of the tight corner that he was in.**

E V Lucas in his essay 'Tight Corners' tries to explain how the mental tight corner is worse than physical tight corner. The narrator entered Christie's, the famous auction house persuaded by his friend. He saw Barbizon pictures were being sold and they were auctioned for very high prizes like four thousand guineas. The narrator did not want to buy any pictures but he simply stood there to see what was going on. He wanted to enjoy fun of taking part in the auction cautiously. His friend warned him that he might be caught and he asked him to stop his game. But he was sure that he was very cautious and he would never be in trouble. But unfortunately he was caught. When the auctions were over the dealers were standing in a queue to give the payment. He decided to stand in the outskirts. As he was standing a new man came to him and asked him whether he was the one who had bought the particular picture. When he said yes, the other man asked him whether he was ready to sell the picture for the one who had made a bid for four thousand guineas for the picture. He was ready to give him fifty guineas for the picture. His presence of mind pushed him to ask him hundred guineas and he got it. Thus he escaped from the tight corner with a cheque for 100 guineas.

**d) As the narrator make a diary entry about the tight corner you faced at Christie's and how you were saved from the dire situation.**

10th June,  
11 a.m.

Entered the Christie's with my friend.  
Many pictures were being auctioned.  
Started bidding in the low level for fun.  
My friend warned me.  
I was safe and I did not bother about the warning from my friend.  
A new picture was put up for auction.  
One rich dealer made his bid with 4 thousand guineas.  
Without realizing the value of the money I said fifty more.  
To my surprise and shock the other dealer stopped his bidding.  
The picture was in my name.  
I had only sixty three pounds in my bank.  
I tried to get the names of my relatives to borrow money.  
I decided to confess my poverty to the Christie's staff but it was too late.  
Stood last in the queue.  
Met by a man who was sent by the rich dealer.  
He asked me to give the picture for 50 guineas, I asked for 100.  
He gave the cheque and got the picture.  
Immense relief after harrowing experience.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH**

**Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words.**

**1. How was the narrator's attempt successful at the end in the 'Tight Corner'?**

The essay 'Tight Corners' was written by E V Lucas. Once the narrator went with his friend to Christie's, an Art Gallery and an auction-sale hall. The narrator had neither knowledge about

art pictures nor enough money to participate in the bidding. The auction was started and the narrator, not understanding the seriousness, started raising the bid amount marginally. By that time, a Daubigny picture was put on for sale. A rich man bade four thousand guineas for it. As usual, the narrator, just for fun raised the bid by fifty guineas more. Lucas thought that someone would raise the bid further. But, to his surprise, nobody else bid after that. No doubt, he unwittingly got into a (mental) tight corner. He could not find ways about how to raise such a huge amount. At that time of critical condition, the rich bidder's agent approached the narrator and offered fifty guineas, provided he passed on the art picture to the bidder. The narrator was immensely relieved. Yet, he had the presence of the mind to demand a hundred guineas. When a cheque for that amount was given to him, his joy doubled.

**VOCABULARY**

**i) Auction House Puzzler.**

Page: 111

You have come across many terms associated with an auction, in the lesson. Now solve the crossword puzzle with words from the lesson. Make use of the clues given.

				2B B	4A A														
				3C C	A	R	D												
			1D D		R	T												3C C	
			A		B													H	
	1A A	U	C	T	I	O	N	E	E	R									
			B		Z														I
		4B B	I	D	O														S
			G		N														T
	2A A	P	R	O	N														I
			Y																E

**Across**

1. conducts auction
2. a protective garment
3. strip with numbers
4. offer

**Down**

1. painter
2. school of painting
3. auction house
4. painting

**ii) Idioms:**

- An idiom is an expression in English with a special meaning of its own. Idioms do not give the literal meaning of the individual words used in them.
- You come across the idiom '**by the skin of one's teeth**' in the lesson. It means '**a narrow escape**'.

**A. Use the idioms in your own sentences.**

- tight corners** : We should be careful in life not to get into **tight corners**.
- shot his bolt** : In the discussion he **shot his bolt** and other had to accept his view.
- in a nice pickle** : When the headmaster called me making a noise in the class I was **in a nice pickle**.
- have cold feet** : When I was chased by a dog I **had cold feet**.

Page: 112

**B. Match the following idioms related to difficult situations with their meanings.**

No.	A	B	Ans
1.	alarm bells ringing	a) abandoning one who is in difficulty	<b>c</b>
2.	back to the wall	b) try any method to overcome a crisis	<b>d</b>
3.	grasp/clutch at straws	c) sign of something going wrong	<b>b</b>
4.	saved by the bell	d) in serious difficulty	<b>e</b>
5.	hang out to dry	e) help at the last moment rescuing one from a difficult situation	<b>a</b>

**C. We use a variety of idioms in our daily life to describe various situations. Describe the narrator's situation in your own words, making use of some of the new idioms you have just learnt.**

The narrator and his companion entered the auction hall just to watch how the sale would be conducted. The mischievous narrator raised the bidding rate out of fun. When there was total silence, he heard the **alarm bells** ringing in his mind. As the rich man did not raise the bidding rate, the narrator understood that he had **shot his bolt**. The narrator was **in a nice pickle** because he did not have enough money to pay for the picture. The hammer fell thrice, and the narrator was caught **in a tight corner**. In the mean time, his friend left the place, unable to control his laughter. Indeed, he **hanged out to dry**. The narrator found himself being pushed **back to the wall**. He speculated on the possibility of borrowing and confessing his poverty to one of the staff. He was trying to **clutch at straws**. He **had cold feet** as the clock ticked by. Dame Luck smiled at him finally. A messenger approached him to offer 50 guineas more to hand over the picture. Immense relief swept over him because he was **saved by the bell**.

**iii) Phrasal Verbs****Use the following phrasal verbs in sentences of your own.****stand**

- up – Your statement will not **stand up** as proof in the court of law.
- for – My father always **stands for** truth and honesty.
- by – Come what may, I will **stand by** you.

**look**

- i) into – The manager looked into the matter seriously.  
 ii) at – When the stranger made a curious noise we all looked at him.  
 iii) through – I have been looking through your cookery book for inspiration.

**run**

- i) over – The class was very interesting and it ran over the time.  
 ii) away – The thief ran away when he saw the police.  
 iii) into – I ran into my class teacher when I visited the Government Exhibition.

Page: 113

**put**

- i) on – She put on her dress after her bath.  
 ii) up – He could not put up with his noisy neighbour.  
 iii) off – The umpire put off the match on account of dim light.

**LISTENING ACTIVITY****Complete the following sentences based on your listening.**

- The programme is organised by the Department of School Education.
- The topic of the seminar is 'Career Guidance and Counselling'.
- The programme is to be held at 3 pm at Dr. A P J Abdul Kalam Auditorium.
- Students are instructed to carry a notebook and a pen to the programme hall.
- Students who wish to attend the second session should register with School Pupil Leader.
- The main purpose of the programme is to provide information on numerous course options and the various institutions that offer relevant courses.

**SPEAKING ACTIVITY****a) Work with a partner. Your friend has lost her books just before the annual examination and she is upset. How will you help her? Take up roles and enact the situation.**

- Gita : Mary, what has happened to you? You look worried.  
 Mary : I lost my text books somewhere.  
 Gita : Don't worry. By mistake, you would have kept them in some place in your house.  
 Mary : You see. I never keep my books in any room other than my study room.  
 Gita : Did you search carefully?  
 Mary : Yes, but I could not find them anywhere.  
 Gita : Did you enquire your mischievous sister?  
 Mary : Yes, but she said she had no idea about my missing books.  
 Gita : That's all right. Let's share our books. Exam is fast approaching.  
 Mary : Thank you, Gita. Group study makes learning easy and fast.  
 Gita : You're absolutely right.

**b) You have recently shifted to a new locality. You cannot find your way home. Your uncle spots you and takes you home. Narrate the incident to the class.**

We shifted to a new residence as my father got transferred. It was a totally new locality for me. The way to reach there is like a maze. There are so many lanes to walk through before we reach

there and all look alike. Just after settling down there, I wanted to see my old friend. So I came out of my house and walked the distance. After spending some good time with him I started to go back home. After crossing the first lane I was confused; I didn't know which lane to take. Unfortunately I took the wrong lane, and it took me away from my house. As I was wandering about my uncle came that way and saw me. He enquired me where I was heading for. Then I told him about my inability. He took me back to my house.

**c) As a friend of the narrator, describe how you would have behaved at the auction.**

I would certainly warn him of the serious consequences of his mischief. I would try to stop him every time he raised the rate. I would try even physically to push him out of Christie's. He would not heed to me and finally he would be caught in a light corner by raising fifty guineas to four thousand guineas. No doubt I could not help him financially. I could try to get the names of some of my friends who might lend money. I would stand by him through his ordeal. When the man approached him to get the picture for fifty guineas, I would persuade him to accept it.

**READING**

Page: 115

**The Stationmaster's supreme sacrifice**

*Sanchari Pal*

**Read the passage and answer the questions that follow.**

**i. Why was the accident at Union Carbide unparalleled in the world's industrial history?**

In the accident Union Carbide pesticide plant released 30 tons of highly toxic gas. Nearly 6000000 people were exposed to the deadly gas. It left thousands of people dead and many became chronic patients.

**ii. How was Dastagir affected by the poisonous gas?**

Dastagir was the deputy stationmaster at Gorakhpur. When he entered the platform he felt his eyes burn and an itching in his throat. By the time the deadly gas had enveloped the station.

**iii. What was the action taken by the superintendent?**

Page: 116

The superintendent tried to stop the trains reaching the station in the previous stations. But Gorakhpur express came to the platform and waited for its departure after 20 minutes. With his support staff he sent the train immediately without getting permission from his authorities.

**iv. How did Dastagir and his staff break rules?**

The Gorakhpur train was waiting in the platform for its departure after 20 minutes. But the poisonous gas was engulfing the station. So Dastagir and his staff sent the train immediately without getting permission from their authorities.

**v. What was the cause of Dastagir's death?**

The cause of his death was prolonged exposure to toxic fumes that was emitted from Union Carbide.

**vi. Find the words from the passage which means the opposite of the following.**

- |                       |          |
|-----------------------|----------|
| a. safeguard          | x risk   |
| b. common or familiar | x queer  |
| c. prompt             | x delay  |
| d. cause              | x effect |

## GRAMMAR

## Conditional Clauses

## i) Complete the following with appropriate conditional clauses.

Page: 117

- We will miss our train, if we are late.
- Jayashree would travel to France, if she had time.
- People get sun-burnt, if they are exposed to sun for a long time.
- Vicky would have passed, if he had studied well.
- I wouldn't refuse, if I got the same offer.
- Sunder would have waited, if he had known about his arrival.
- Vijayashree will be busy, if she joins the course.
- Adhvika will not go to play, if she has homework to do.

## ii) Complete the following paragraph.

Did you hear about that boy who won one crore in a game show? If I had won (win) that much money, I would have quit (quit) my job the next day. I would travel (travel) round the world and stay (stay) in the most luxurious hotels. If I wanted (want) anything, I would buy (buy) it. If I saw (see) a Mercedes that I wanted, I would buy (buy) it. I could (can) do anything in the world if I had one crore rupees. Oh, I am starting to sound a little materialistic. Well, I will do (do) good things with the money as well. If anybody needs (need) help I will take (take) care of their needs. I will donate (donate) money to charities. I will give (give) money to help support the arts. If I won (win) that much money, I wouldn't keep it all for myself. I would help (help) as many people as possible.

## iii) Fill in the blanks in the following dialogue.

- Gopal : What's wrong, Muthu? You look terrible!
- Muthu : Well, you will look (look) terrible today, too, if you have (have) a day like mine yesterday. My car slid into a tree, because the road was slippery.
- Gopal : Oh! I was driving on the slippery road yesterday and I didn't have such trouble. What happened?
- Muthu : Well, I think if I had not driven (drive not) so fast, I would not have slid (slide, not) into the tree.
- Gopal : Slippery road and speed don't mix. If drivers speed (speed) on the wet roads, they're likely to spin their car in a circle.
- Muthu : I know. But I have one more problem. I didn't have my driver's license with me. If I had had (have) it I would not have had (have to, not) to pay an extra fine in the court next week.
- Gopal : Why were you driving without your license?
- Muthu : Well, I lost my wallet some days ago. It slipped out of my pocket, while I was riding the bus to work.
- Gopal : Oh, Muthu! If you had not taken (take, not) that bus, you would not have lost (lose, not) your wallet. If you had not lost (lose, not) your wallet, you would have had (have) your driver's license with you when you hit the tree. If you had had (have) your driver's license with you, you would not have had to pay (have to pay, not) a big fine when you go to court to the next week. And of course if you had not driven (drive, not) too fast, you would not have run (run into, not) a tree, and you would not have been (be, not) in this mess now. If I were you I would take (take) it easy for a while and just stay (stay) home where you are safe.

Page: 118

- Muthu : Enough about me. How about you?
- Gopal : Well, things are really looking up for me. I'm planning to take off for Goa as soon as I finish my finals. I'm sick of all this old, rainy weather we've been having.
- Muthu : I wish I would go (go) with you. How are you planning on getting there?
- Gopal : If I have (have) enough money I will fly (fly). Otherwise I will take (take) the bus. I wish I could drive (drive) my own car because it would be (be) nice to drive there, but it's such a long trip. I've been looking for a friend to go with me and share the driving.
- Muthu : I have a super idea! Why don't I go with you? I can share the driving. I'm a great driver!
- Gopal : Oh, Muthu! I can't believe it.

### Framing questions

#### A. Seema goes to a hotel for lunch. The waiter explains to her the different items available at that time. Here is the conversation between them. Complete the dialogue. You may use modals to frame questions.

- Seema : Could I get something to eat immediately?
- Waiter : Yes Ma'm. We have full meals and other tiffin items too.
- Seema : Do you have chappati?
- Waiter : Yes Ma'm. It is available.
- Seema : Will it take much time?
- Waiter : It should not take long. Do you want coffee?
- Seema : Yes bring that too. Will you bring them as early as possible?
- Waiter : Ok Ma'm. How do you like your coffee?
- Seema : I prefer it cold. Do you have ice-cream?
- Waiter : Sorry Ma'm we don't have ice cream served here. But you can get it in the outlet next door.
- Seema : Oh that's fine. Ok, please get these quickly.
- Waiter : Sure Ma'm.

#### B. Answer the questions after reading the story.

Page: 120

##### 1. Did Mrs. Umar see the thief?

No, Mrs. Umar did not see the thief.

##### 2. What was Mrs. Umar doing when the thief broke into the house?

Mrs. Umar was watching a movie when the thief broke into the house.

##### 3. Was Mr. Umar watching movie with his wife when the thief broke into the house?

No, Mr. Umar was not watching movie with his wife when the thief broke into the house.

##### 4. What was Mr. Umar doing in the kitchen?

Mr. Umar was preparing tea in the kitchen.

#### Frame suitable questions for the following statements.

##### 1. Mr. Umar was at home when the event occurred.

Where was Mr. Umar when the event occurred?

##### 2. Yes, Mr. Umar saw the thief entering the neighbour's house.

Did Mr. Umar see the thief entering the neighbour's house?

**3. Mrs. Umar was watching the movie while her husband was drinking water.**

What was Mrs. Umar doing while her husband was drinking water?

**4. The thief broke into the house while they were watching a movie.**

When did the thief break into the house?

**1. Questions Tags.**

Page: 121

**A. Add appropriate question tags to the following sentences.**

- Cities are increasingly becoming urbanized.
- They experiment with ways to improve air quality.
- The aim should be to reduce congestion.
- There is an urgent need to provide clean, reliable and affordable energy to their growing populations.
- Automation and shared mobility will play a key role in this transformation.
- It changes the way people commute in cities.
- Before long, a fleet of electric autonomous vehicles (AVs) could drive people to their destination.
- These shared AVs will run at higher utilisation rates.
- They can substantially reduce the cost of mobility and congestion.
- These should not be thought of as luxury but as necessity.

**aren't they?**  
**don't they?**  
**shouldn't it?**

**isn't it?**  
**won't they?**  
**doesn't it?**

**couldn't it?**  
**won't they?**  
**can't they?**  
**should they?**

**B. Add appropriate question tags and role play the dialogue with your friend.**

Jeyanth : Hello, Anish! It's your physics exam today, isn't it?

Anish : Yes. They have set a very long paper. Yet, I managed to finish the paper, didn't I?

Jeyanth : True. My maths paper too was very long. I couldn't finish it, could I?

Anish : I could not solve my paper properly, could I?

Jeyanth : Ok. Actually, my question paper was very easy, wasn't it?

Anish : Mine wasn't easy. I made a silly mistake, didn't I?

Jeyanth : Tell me about your English paper, will you?

Anish : The story comprehension was very easy. I am sure to score more than ten marks on fifteen. I wrote it very well. There wouldn't be any mistake, would there?

Jeyanth : For me, my letter- writing was the best. I didn't make a single mistake, did I?

Anish : Ok. I've got lots to study for tomorrow's exam, haven't I?

Jeyanth : Me too. So, see you later. All the best, bye.

Anish : Thank you. Wish you the same, bye.

**WRITING**

Page: 122

**A. Read the information in the table and answer the following questions.**

No.	Event	Year	Affected Area
1.	Earthquake	2001	Bhuj, Gujarat
2.	Tsunami	2004	Coastline TN, Kerala, A.P., A&N Islands, Pondicherry.

No.	Event	Year	Affected Area
3.	Floods	July 2005	Maharashtra
4.	Earthquake	2008	Kashmir
5.	Floods	2008	North Bihar
6.	Cyclone	2008	Tamil Nadu
7.	Floods	2009	Andhra Pradesh & Karnataka
8.	Cyclone	2011	Tamil Nadu / Cuddalore
9.	Flash floods	June 2013	Uttarkhand
10.	Cyclone	Oct. 2013	Coastline of Orissa & Jharkhand
11.	Floods	Dec. 2015	Tamil Nadu / Chennai
12.	Cyclone	Dec. 2016	Tamil Nadu / Chennai

**1. What kinds of natural disasters have occurred before 2005?**

Earthquake and tsunami occurred before 2005

**2. Name the disasters that are common in India.**

Floods and cyclones are common in India.

**3. Mention the states often affected by disasters.**

Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh are often affected by disasters.

**4. List out the disasters that are common in North India.**

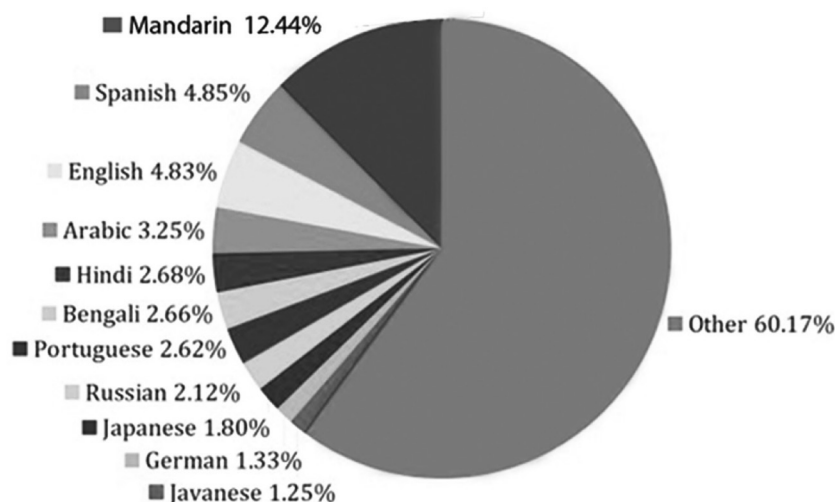
Earthquakes and floods are common in North India.

**5. Write three sentences on your inference about the data given.**

India is prone to natural calamities. Almost every 3 years some part of India gets affected. Our Government should be always ready to help people when they are affected by such natural calamities.

**B. Study the pie-chart carefully and answer the questions that follow.**

Percentage of people who speak each language as their first language



**1. Which language is spoken by most people?**

Most of the people speak Mandarin.

**2. What are the Indian languages that rank among the top five spoken languages?**

Hindi is the only language that ranks among the top five spoken languages.

**3. Which are the languages that are spoken by less than three percent of people?**

Hindi, Bengali, Portuguese, Russian, Japanese, German and Japanese are the languages that are spoken by less than three percent of people.

**4. With the help of the question and answers draw your own conclusions from the pie chart. Then write a paragraph on the popular spoken languages.**

Generally people are known by their mother tongue or the language which they speak. As per the pie chart 12.44% of people speak Mandarin. Apart from this most of the people speak English and Spanish. Only two Indian languages – Hindi and Bengali find their place in this pie chart. Some of the languages are spoken by very few people when compared with other languages. For example, Japanese and German are spoken by 1.80% and 1.33% respectively. The languages which appear in the pie chart make for nearly 40% of the people.

**Dialogue Writing**

**Read the dialogue between two friends on Pollution and complete the following story board with an interesting conversation.**

Mary : Shall we order fried rice?

Mani : No, Mary. It's not good for health.

Mary : What's wrong with it?

Mani : It will upset our stomach.

Mary : What about burger?

Mani : No, No. Such junk food is harmful.

Mary : Ok. You can place order.

Mani : Let's take idlies. It is ideal for people of all ages.

Mary : Yea. My parents say the something. They never allow me to take junk food lila pizza, burger, fried rice etc.

**Write conversations on the following situation.**

**i) Between two friends about uses and abuses of mobile phones.**

Velu : Hi, Balu, is it a new mobile? It looks beautiful.

Balu : Yes, I bought it yesterday. It is an Android phone. It has many facilities.

Velu : Balu, do we use all the facilities? Basically a phone is meant for listening and speaking. Are these facilities essential?

Balu : It depends on how we use it.

Velu : Do we use it or abuse it?

Balu : It is a good question. Again let me tell you we can use it properly if we want.

Velu : That is true. But we have many chances to misuse or abuse it.

- Balu : I do accept it. If we have a facility like google in the phone, we can get many information just with a touch. But if we go to some negative sites it is abuse. Who does it? Only the person, not the mobile.
- Velu : You say it depends on the individual to use it or abuse it.
- Balu : Exactly. It is almost like a Pandora's box. You should use it with care and caution. Without any control, all bad things and confusion will surround you.
- Velu : You are right Balu. The facilities are boons.
- Balu : I am happy you understood my point.

**ii) Between two friends about planting trees.**

- Bharathi : Hi, Mala, Tomorrow is your birthday, isn't it? Anyway my advance birthday wishes.
- Mala : Why, tomorrow will you not be here to wish me?
- Bharathi : Surely I will be here. What's big plan about your birthday?
- Mala : Not much, I will call all my friends for a small party in the evening. I have planned to plant some trees in the morning.
- Bharathi : Yes, that's a good idea. I'll also join you.
- Mala : I will be happy if you join me. Are you also interested in planting trees?
- Bharathi : Of course yes. This is the only service we can do to the society.
- Mala : You see, when we read certain reports about the future weather condition it is really shocking. This situation is created by us – our generation and our previous generation.
- Bharathi : You are right. It is our bounden duty to do something for this. We cannot stop Government cutting down trees for some development. What we can do is to plant one tree when one is cut for development.
- Mala : You are right. You have understood the situation well. If our generation do not take this seriously we will find the life on earth very difficult.

**iii) Between two friends about the importance of reading newspaper.**

- Abel : Hi, David, what do you have in your hand?
- David : Newspaper for my father. Today the paper boy didn't turn up. So I went to the market and bought the paper.
- Abel : Why is your father so particular about the newspaper?
- David : Yes, everyday morning he reads the paper before he takes breakfast.
- Abel : Do you think it is very important for us too?
- David : Yes surely. That's the only way to know about our society.
- Abel : Now TV news is more than enough to know about that.
- David : Newspaper reading not only gives you news. It improves your language. Some time we may read the news which we know but reading will give an understanding of the language.
- Abel : That is very true.
- David : Not only that, newspaper has many column writers who give their expert opinion on certain issues like demonetization or GST. Such things have different angles.
- Abel : True, when we read such items we will get to know them in a better way.

- David : Moreover the newspaper gives opinion about movies, sports and other items. It gives some opening to know what we can do after +2 and where we can study which course.
- Abel : You are right. I will make it a point to read at least one news paper daily.
- David : Good. Now my father will be waiting, I'll go.
- Abel : Ok, see you again.

**iv) Between two friends about the uses of the internet.**

- Shiela : Mabel, what do you think about the internet?
- Mabel : Why, it is an important invention of this century. Without internet we cannot have this knowledge explosion.
- Shiela : That's true. I am thinking about the knowledge it spreads around the world. But at the same time things like 'Blue Whale' pose serious problems.
- Mabel : One way your concern is right. In everything we have good and bad. What you choose is important.
- Shiela : You see without this internet our life will not be that easy. We send messages quickly and big companies cannot have its business without internet. But when we think of an individual who uses it, I have my reservations.
- Mabel : Take for example a student. If he has some problem in understanding a concept in a subject he has a chance to clear his doubt using the internet. He will go to the right site and get it cleared. I will never say that will substitute a teacher.
- Shiela : We will take the same example. We can't say he will stop with clearing his doubts. You mention the right site. If he is tempted to go to the other sites his mind will be spoilt and may lead him away from the right path.
- Mabel : In this modern world what is important is self-discipline. This world is a combination of good and evil. It depends on the individual to take what he wants.
- Shiela : I understand. Anyway it is clear we cannot live in this world now without internet.

**v) Between a father and son on the choice of career.**

- Father : My dear son, you have completed your Higher Secondary Course. Now you are ready for choosing your career. Your choice of course should be connected with your career.
- Son : Yes dad. Since my childhood days I have been 'aspiring' to be an IPS or IAS officer.
- Father : Then you have to write the entrance exam after your graduation.
- Son : Yes dad. I have to select a course which will be suitable for this career.
- Father : Any graduate course is ok. But you have to prepare for that from the first year itself.
- Son : I understand dad. Should I take some course in Arts College or Engineering College?
- Father : Engineering College will be better. Your analytical power will increase and that will help you for the entrance exam. That's why most of the present IAS and IPS officers are engineers.
- Son : That's not a bad idea. But I have to spend four years to complete the course. If it is from Arts College three years are enough to complete the course.
- Father : But it is worth. Any way you have to join a coaching centre in the second year.
- Son : Ok dad. I will follow your idea. I will join Engineering Course, preferably I will select CSE.
- Father : Ok, we will choose the best college.

**vi) Between you and a bookseller on buying books.**

- Bookseller : Yes, what can I do for you? Do you like to get some books?
- Kannan : Yes sir, I am interested to get some personality improvement books.
- Bookseller : We have plenty of books on such subject.
- Kannan : Can I see some of them?
- Bookseller : Sure, we have Robin Sharma series like 'Leader without Title', 'Discover Your Destiny', 'Daily Inspiration' and many more.
- Kannan : Any other author?
- Bookseller : Shiv Khera, Rhonda Byrne, Dale Carnegie and some more
- Kannan : I am interested in Shiv Khera and Robin Sharma.
- Bookseller : Ok, I will show their books to you. You can select.

**vii) Between two friends on the benefits of early rising.**

- Usha : Hi, Uma, how are you?
- Uma : I am fine, what about you?
- Usha : I am also fine. When do you normally get up in the morning?
- Uma : Yes, what happened? Why do you ask such a question now? I usually get up at 6.00 am.
- Usha : You see, we say 'early to bed and early to rise'. I want to know how far it is good for us.
- Uma : I really go with this. When we rise early we will have enough time to do our daily scores. We need not be in a hurry.
- Usha : You are right, but I find it difficult to rise in the morning. Even if I keep the alarm, I put off and then sleep.
- Uma : It happens in the beginning. Everything is a habit. If you do something regularly it will become your habit.
- Usha : If I realise that early rising will help me I can do this. I always have a doubt about it.
- Uma : You can be sure that it will help you to put things in order. You will have lot of time to do your work at home. Moreover you need not be in a hurry to get ready to go to college. You will have at least one hour in the morning to go through your lessons.
- Usha : 6 am is not enough. We should get up at least 5.30. Now I am trying it. I will succeed.
- Uma : I will also try to get up at 5.30 from tomorrow.

**viii) Between two friends on an exciting cricket match.**

- Raja : Vinod, how was the IPL yesterday?
- Vinod : Oh my God! It was really thrilling. CSK and MI are equal in strength. The match was swinging from one team to another.
- Raja : Did you think CSK would win?
- Vinod : In the beginning I thought it was possible for CSK. But after 12 overs I was not sure.
- Raja : We should give credit to Mumbai Indian team also. They played well and raised the score to 201. It was a very good score in that ground.
- Vinod : Very true. CSK openers gave some life to the match but after their fall it was difficult to push the score. One time the asking rate was almost 12 per over.

- Raja : When Dhoni came in I thought he would do his part well. But he disappointed us.
- Vinod : But Bravo was sent at the right time. Fortunately he had enough overs to play his shots.
- Raja : Yes, he was the hero of that day. CSK won because of his incredible run chase.

**ix) Between two friends on the importance of punctuality.**

- Prince : Hi, Abdul, where were you yesterday? I couldn't see you in Kumar's function.
- Abdul : I am sorry, I had to take my uncle to hospital. I thought I could make it in time. It crossed 6'o clock. Even if I tried I could make it only at 7. So I decided to stay back.
- Prince : You could have come.
- Abdul : No, the function must have started at 6. Then how could I come at 7?
- Prince : Are you that particular about punctuality?
- Abdul : Of course yes. I want to be punctual and I want others also to be punctual.
- Prince : Abdul, that's very good. We should be punctual in everything.
- Abdul : We should never postpone things. You should start our work in time and finish it in time.
- Prince : But these days it is difficult to find people of that sort.
- Abdul : That's why we suffer in the society. If I postpone doing my work it will give trouble to many people. In the same way because I am late many will be waiting for me. So punctuality is very important for everyone.
- Prince : I understand. Do you think we should be that punctual to attend a party?
- Abdul : We should observe punctuality. It will give time to relax.
- Prince : Abdul, thank you so much for impressing me on punctuality. I will try to be punctual hereafter.

**x) Between two friends on a picnic they enjoyed recently.**

- Sam : Suresh, how did you enjoy our picnic to Kodaikannal?
- Suresh : It was wonderful. We should thank Balaji for having arranged everything perfectly.
- Sam : You are right. From the vehicle to our food everything was wonderful.
- Suresh : Did you like the game we had near the lake?
- Sam : Of course yes. Everyone participated well.
- Suresh : The boating was good. It was a new experience for me. I never had a chance to go for boating.
- Sam : I enjoyed the walk to the suicide corner. The rock pillar was really good.
- Suresh : The place we selected for eating our lunch was beautiful. We could see lot of flowers around there.
- Sam : So everything went on well. Next year also we should arrange a picnic to a summer resort.

# MACAVITY - THE MYSTERY CAT

*T S Eliot*

### About the Author

<b>Author</b>	: Thomas Stearns Eliot (T.S. Eliot)
<b>Born</b>	: 26th September, 1888 - St. Louis, Missouri, USA.
<b>Education</b>	: Ph.D in Harvard University.
<b>Career</b>	: • Poet • Dramatist • Editor • Critic
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • The Wasteland • 'Love Song of J. Alfred Prufrock' • Ash Wednesday • Four Quarters • Journey of the Magi • After Strange Gods • Naming of Cats • Murder in the Cathedral
<b>Awards</b>	: Nobel Prize for Literature (1948)
<b>Died</b>	: 4th January, 1965.



### Warm Up

Page: 126

- A. A French proverb goes thus: 'The dog may be wonderful prose, but only the cat is poetry.' You may have observed that all animals possess a number of unique qualities. Fill in the columns with words and phrases associated with each of the following animals.**

Dog	Cat	Wolf	Elephant
faithful	stealthy	cunning	mighty
Dog's life	Cat call	wolf whistle	elephant ear
Dog in a manger	Let the cat out of the bag	Keep the wolf from the door	An elephant in the room

- B. People admire some of these animal qualities. What are they? Have you noticed some of them in yourself or in others? Share your views with the class.**

- Faithfulness love and care for the master are the important qualities associated with dog. Stealthiness is associated with cat. Wolf is known for voraciousness whereas elephant is associated with might.
- I am loyal and faithful to my friends. They are also faithful to me. So we work together well. In my neighbour's behaviour I observe the cat's quality namely stealthiness. Whenever a meeting of the residents in our area takes place, he enters without others' notice and leaves the place as stealthily as a cat.

### SUMMARY

T.S Eliot was an essayist, critic, playwright and poet of twentieth century. T.S Eliot, in his poem 'Macavity – The Mystery Cat' describes the mysterious qualities of a cat of villainous character. Macavity is a tall and thin cat who is always up to some crime. He is too clever to leave any evidence of his guilt. He is an enigma to every detective agency in the world including Scotland Yard and Flying Squad who are specialized in investigating crime. There is never enough proof to arrest him and "he's a mile away" from all crime spots. Not only does he break the human law but also breaks the law of gravity. His brows are deeply

lining as a result of continuous planning of crime. Macavity has sunken eyes and "his head is highly domed". He never combs his whiskers. His movements resemble that of a snake. He spends his time plotting for his criminal acts and how to carry them out. The poem accuses Macavity of misbehaviour, such as stealing milk, but also holds him responsible for major crimes. He is referred to as a "fiend in feline shape". He has been suspected of vandalism, theft, cheating at cards, and spying. He has also controlled an organized crime with Mungojerrie, Rumpleteazer and Griddlebone among the members.


**GLOSSARY**

Page: 128

defy	–	to resist or to challenge
bafflement	–	total confusion
Scotland Yard	–	the headquarters of London Metropolitan Police Service
Flying Squad	–	a police force ready to plunge into action
levitation	–	the action of rising and floating in air
fakir	–	a holy person who lives on alms and has the power to levitate
ginger	–	alert and cautious
fiend	–	demon
feline	–	cat
depravity	–	evil quality
larder	–	cupboard for storing food
rifle	–	ransack to steal
Peke	–	a Pekinese dog
stifle	–	to suppress someone from acting
trellis	–	wooden bar used as a support for creepers
Admiralty	–	a Government Department that administered the British Navy
deceitfulness	–	cunningness
suavity	–	confidence and sophistication
alibi	–	a claim of evidence that one was elsewhere when a crime was committed


**MEANINGS**

mystery	secret, furtive	defy	challenge
bafflement	confusion	despair	dejection
levitation	flying	fakir	a holy person
seek	search	sunken	lowered
lined with	full of	domed	arched
sways	moves	fiend	demon
feline	cat	monster	huge
depravity	evil quality	larder	cupboard for storing food
rifled	stolen	Peke	a Pekinese dog

stifled	suppressed	trellis	wooden bar used as a support for creepers
Admiralty	A Government Department that administer the British Navy	scrap	tussle, fight
disclosed	revealed	deceitfulness	cunningness
suavity	confidence	deed	action
Napoleon of crime	leader of criminals		

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 128

**A. Based on your understanding of the poem answer the following questions in a sentence or two.****i. What is Macavity's nickname?**

Macavity's nickname is Hidden Paw.

**ii. Why is the Flying Squad frustrated?**

When the Flying Squad reaches the scene of crime they could not find Macavity. So it is frustrated.

**iii. Which law does Macavity break?**

Macavity breaks the human law.

Page: 129

**iv. What makes the fakir stare in wonder?**

Macavity's power of levitation makes the fakir stare in wonder.

**v. Describe Macavity's appearance.**

Macavity is tall and thin and its eyes are sunken in.

**vi. Where can you encounter Macavity?**

We can encounter Macavity in a by-street and in the square.

**vii. Why does the poet say Macavity is outwardly respectable?**

Macavity is always preoccupied with some serious thoughts. His coat is dusty and his whiskers are unkempt.

**viii. Who does the Secret Service suspect when a loss is reported?**

The Secret Service suspects Macavity when a loss is reported.

**ix. What is Macavity expected to be doing after committing a crime?**

He is expected to be relaxing happily or doing difficult division sums.

**x. Mention any two qualities of Macavity.**

Macavity breaks all human laws, It has power of levitation and it escapes from the scene of crime immediately.

**xi. Which two characters does the poet refer to as examples of wicked cats?**

The poet refers to Mungojerrie and Griddlebone as examples of wicked cats which are mentioned in the poet's book 'Old Possom's Book of Practical Cats.'

**xii. Why is Macavity called the 'Napoleon of Crime'?**

Macavity is responsible for all the crimes that happen in its place. So it is called 'Napoleon of Crime' which means leader of criminals.

**B. Read the poem once again and complete the summary using the words given in the box.**

'Macavity – The Mystery Cat' is a humorous poem, where the poet T.S. Eliot describes the mysterious (a) qualities of a shrewd vile cat. He commits a crime at every possible opportunity. He is an elusive master (b) criminal who leaves no evidence after he commits a crime. Even the Scotland Yard, the London (c) detective agency is unable to arrest him. The Flying Squad is (d) desperate because every time they rush to the crime spot to seize Macavity, he is not there. He breaks the human law as well as the law of (e) gravity. He baffles even a (f) fakir with his powers of levitation. Macavity appears tall and thin with (g) sunken eyes. He is always preoccupied with some serious (h) thoughts. His coat is dusty and his (i) whiskers are unkempt. Macavity is a (j) devil in the guise of a cat. He appears to be outwardly (k) respectable but his actions disprove it. Macavity loots the (l) larder, ransacks the jewels-case and breaks (m) greenhouse glass but wonder of wonders is he is not to be found anywhere there. He is always a mile away from the scene of crime, happily relaxing or doings difficult (n) division sums. He is clever at making up an (o) alibi every time he plots a crime. All the notorious cats are nothing but the (p) agents of Macavity, The Napoleon of Crime.

larder	respectable	devil	sunken	agents	alibi	fakir	gravity
whiskers	criminal	thought	division	detective	desperate	qualities	greenhouse

**C. Read the poem and answer the following in a short paragraph of 8 or 10 sentences.****i. What are the mysterious ways in which Macavity acts?**

In T.S Eliot's poem, "Macavity: The Mystery Cat", he describes the mysterious qualities of a cat of villainous character. Macavity is a tall and thin cat who is always up to some crime. He is too clever to leave any evidence of his guilt. He is an enigma to every detective agency in the world including Scotland Yard and Flying Squad who are specialized in investigating crime. There is never enough proof to arrest him and "he's a mile away" from all crime spots.

**ii. Give an account of Macavity's destructive mischief.**

The poem accuses Macavity of misbehaviour, such as stealing milk, but also holds him responsible for major crimes. He is referred to as a "fiend in feline shape". He has been suspected of stifling Pekes, vandalism, theft, cheating at cards, and spying. After the crime he will not be found in the place; he will be miles away from the spot of crime. He always keeps an alibi for his crime.

**iii. Describe the appearance and qualities of Macavity.**

Macavity's brows are deeply lined as a result of continuous planning of crime. Macavity has sunken eyes and "his head is highly domed". He never combs his whiskers. His movements resemble that of a snake. He spends his time plotting for his criminal acts and how to carry them out. He is tall and thin. He is a monster of depravity; he has all evil qualities. His coat is untidy and his whiskers are uncombed. He breaks all human laws and he has the power of levitation. Moreover he is very cunning.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH**

**Answer in a paragraph about 100 – 150 words.**

**1. What does T S Eliot say about Macavity, the Mystery cat?**

T.S Eliot was an essayist, critic, playwright and poet of twentieth century. T.S Eliot, in his poem 'Macavity – The Mystery Cat' describes the mysterious qualities of a cat of villainous character. Macavity is a tall and thin cat who is always up to some crime. He is too clever to leave any evidence of his guilt. He is an enigma to every detective agency in the world including Scotland Yard and Flying

Squad who are specialized in investigating crime. His brows are deeply lined as a result of continuous planning of crime. Macavity has sunken eyes and "his head is highly domed".. He spends his time plotting for his criminal acts. The poem accuses Macavity of misbehaviour, such as stealing milk, but also holds him responsible for major crimes. He is referred to as a "fiend in feline shape". He has been suspected of vandalism, theft, cheating at cards, and spying.

**D. Read the given lines and answer the questions that follow.**

*i. 'Macavity's a Mystty Cat: he's called the Hidden Paw..'*

**a) Does the poet talk about a real cat?**

In the poem it seems that he talks about a real cat. But he may mean a skilled and mysterious thief.

**b) Why is he called a Hidden Paw?**

He is called a Hidden Paw because he is always hidden from the Scotland Yard and Flying Squad.

*ii. 'He's a bafflement of Scotland Yard, Flying Squad's despair  
For when they reach the scene of crime – Macavity's not there!'*

Page: 130

**a) What's Scotland Yard?**

Scotland Yard is the headquarters of London Metropolitan Police Service. Here means the police head quarters of London.

**b) Why does the Flying Squad feel disappointed?**

The flying squad is disappointed because when they reach the spot of crime, Macavity will never be there. So they cannot arrest him.

*iii. 'He sways his head from side to side with the movements like a snake  
And when you think he's half asleep he's always wide awake.....'*

**a) Explain the comparison made here.**

Macavity's movement of his head is compared to the movement of a snake, moving its head from left to right and right to left.

**b) What does he pretend to do?**

He pretends to sleep.

*iv. 'For he's a fiend in feline shape, a monster of depravity'.*

**a) How is the cat described in this line?**

The cat is a demon in the shape of a cat and it is full of evil qualities.

**b) Explain the phrase 'monster of depravity'**

Monster means huge and depravity means evil quality. So it means the cat is full of evil Qualities.

*v. 'And his footprints are not found in any file of Scotland Yard's'.*

**a) What seems to be a challenge for the Scotland Yard?**

To find an evidence for Macavity's crime is a challenge for the Scotland Yard.

**b) Why do they need his footprints?**

They need his footprints as an evidence to arrest him.

*vi. 'It must have been Macavity!' but he's a mile away'*

**a) What is Macavity blamed for?**

Macavity is blamed for a theft.

**b) Where is he?**

He is one mile away from the spot of crime.

**vii. 'There never was a Cat of such deceitfulness and suavity'.****a) Which cat is talked of here?**

Macavity is the cat which is talked of here.

**b) How is he different from the rest?**

In deceitfulness and confidence this cat is different from the rest. This the most deceitful and confident cat.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

Read the following lines and answer the questions that follow

**1. 'Macavity, Macavity, there's no one like Macavity,**

*He's broken every human law, he breaks the law of gravity'*

**a) Why is there no one like Macavity?**

There is no one like Macavity because he is a criminal who cannot be caught by the police.

**b) Which human law does he break?**

He breaks the law of gravity.

**2. 'Macavity's a ginger cat, he's very tall and thin;**

*You would know him if you saw him, for his eyes are sunken in'.*

**a) What kind of cat is Macavity?**

Macavity is very alert and cautious.

**b) What kind of eyes does he have?**

He has sunken eyes.

**3. 'You may meet him in a by-street, you may see him in a square –**

*But when a crime's discovered, then Macavity's not there!'*

**a) Where is Macavity found normally?**

Normally he is found in cross-streets and square.

**b) What is the specialty mentioned about Macavity?**

He may be found in the cross street or square but when a crime is committed he cannot be found anywhere.

**4. 'Or the green house glass is broken and the trellis past repair**

*Ay, there's the wonder of thing! Macavity's not there!'*

**a) What are the crimes mentioned here?**

The crimes mentioned here are breaking the glass of the green house and damaging the support to the creepers.

**b) What is the wonder of thing?**

When the crimes like breaking the glass of green house and damaging the support to the creepers are committed, Macavity, who is responsible for this, is not found anywhere.

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES****E. Explain the following lines with reference to the context.****i. 'His power of levitation would make fakir stare'****Reference:**

This line is taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. It breaks the human laws and law of gravity. It has the power of levitation i.e. flying above. This power makes a holy man who has the power to levitate wonder at the cat .

**ii. 'And when you think he's half asleep, he's always wide awake'****Reference:**

This line is taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes about a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. The cat is tall and thin and its eyes are sunken. It moves its head from one side to the other like a snake. It is a deceitful cat and it pretends to be sleeping. When we think that it is half asleep it will be fully awake.

**iii. 'And his footprints are found in any file of Scotland Yards'.****Reference:**

This line is taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes about a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. It is such an elusive cat, that the police could not catch it though they are sure that Macavity is the criminal. It does not leave any evidence of its presence in the spot of crime. The Scotland Yard Police never finds any proof of Macaviity's criminal activities.

**iv. 'There may be a scrap of paper in the hall or the stairs'.****Reference:**

This line is taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. The poet wants to make it clear that even if the police find some small evidence like scrap of paper in the spot of crime it is not possible to arrest him. It is useless to try to catch Macavity because he will not be found in that palce.

**v. 'He always has an alibi, and one or two to spare'****Reference:**

This line is taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. Macavity has its own way of escaping from the place of crime. He always has an alibi when he commits a crime. Alibi means a claim that one was elsewhere when a crime was committed. Macavity is good to provide an alibi and has some more alibies in store.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Explain the following lines with reference to the context.

1. *'His brow is deeply lined with thoughts, his head is highly domed; His coat is dusty from neglect, his whiskers are uncombed'.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. He cannot be found anywhere by the police when a crime is discovered. He is always with serious thoughts so his eye brow is with lines. His head is domed. His coat is dusty and his whiskers are unkempt. He never bothered about how she looked outside.

2. *'And when the larder's looted, or the jewel-case is rifled, Or when the milk is missing, or another Peke's been stifled,'*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. He is a known criminal. The poet accuses him of stealing food from the cupboard, ransacking the jewel-case and small thefts like stealing milk. He suppresses the Pekinese dog of the house from acting. Though he commits all these crimes he cannot be found by the authorities.

3. *'You'll be sure to find him resting, or a licking of his thumbs, Or engaged in doing complicated long division sums'.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. He is a well-known criminal. But when a crime is committed he will be a mile away from the spot of the crime. He will be found happily relaxing or licking his thumbs or doing some difficult division sums. So it is not possible for the police to connect him with the crime.

4. *(I might mention Mungojerrie, I might mention Griddlebone) 'Are nothing more than agents for the Cat who all the time Just controls their operations: the Napoleon of Crime'.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from 'Macavity-The Mysterious Cat' written by T.S. Eliot.

**Explanation:**

He describes a notorious cat which cannot be arrested by the police. He is a well-known criminal. He has been suspected of stifling Pokes, vandalism, theft, cheating at cards, and spying. He has also controlled an organized crime with Mungojerrie and Griddlebone. He is called the Napoleon of Crime because he leads the criminals as Napoleon led the soldiers in the battle successfully. Mungojerrie and Griddlebone are fictional characters specialised in Petty thefts and mischief in T.S. Eliot's book 'Old Possum's Book of Practical Cats'

**F. Eliot has used many figures of speech to present the poem to the readers in an interesting way. He has attributed human qualities to a cat in this poem.**

**i. Identify the literary devices used in the following lines:**

**a. He sways his head from side to side with movements like a snake.**

Simile.

**b. They say he cheats at cards**

Paraphrasing.

**ii. Give four instances where the poet has used alliteration in this poem.**

**Macavity** is a **Mystery** Cat: **he's** called the **Hidden** Paw

Macavity's ginger cat he's **tall** and **thin**

His brow is deeply lined with thought, **his head** is **highly** domed;

**For** he's **fiend** in **feline** shape, a monster of depravity.

**iii. What is the rhyme scheme used in the poem?**

aabb.

**iv. Pick out the pair of rhyming words used in the poem.**

law - paw	despair - there	Macavity - gravity	stare - there
thin - in	domed - uncombed	snake - awake	Macavity - depravity
square - there	cards - yards	repair - there	Macavity - suavity
astray - way	Rifled - stifled	thumbs - sums	spare-there
known - Griddlebone	time - crime	stair - there	say - away
spare - there	air-there		

**G. LISTENING ACTIVITY**

**First read the following sets of limericks with missing words. Now, listen to them being read out aloud by your teacher or played on the recorder. As you enjoy the absurd fun, complete the verse with what you hear. You may listen to them again, if required.**

Page: 131

**I**

A wonderful bird is the (i) Pelican.

His beaks can hold more than his (ii) belly can

He can hold in his beak

Enough food for a (iii) week!

But I'll be darned if I know how the Peli-can?

**II**

There once was a (iv) bear at the zoo

Who always had something to do

When it (v) bored him, you know, to go to and fro,

He (vi) reversed it and went to fro and to.

## III

There once was a (vii) cute little bunny,  
 Who I thought was a sweet and (viii) funny  
 He ate all the carrots,  
 And looked at the (ix) parrots,  
 And that was my cute little (x) bunny.

## H. SPEAKING ACTIVITY

- a. 'This phrase originates from the fable 'The Monkey and the Cat'. Explain how Macavity contradicts the phrase 'cat's paw'.

'Cat's paw' means a person who is used by someone else to achieve his end. One who acts does it not for him but for somebody else. Macavity does not use others for his crime. He is not used by others also. He commits the crime for his own purpose. So he contradicts the phrase 'cat's paw'.

- b. 'When the mouse laughs at the cat, there is a hole nearby'. Explain the meaning of this statement to your friends.

When there is a way to escape the mouse will also laugh at the cat. The mouse is sure that if the cat jumps on him he can escape maybe by entering the hole which is close by. In the same way, if a weak person is happily facing a strong man in a fight, it is clear he has a way to escape from him.

- c. Compose your own limericks on an elephant, a peacock and a butterfly. Read it out to your class.

## Elephant

Elephants sleep standing up,  
 and can't really drink from a cup.  
 They like a good bath,  
 but are rotten at math,  
 and eat from sundown to sun up.

## Peacock

Peacock is a sight for people to see  
 Multi coloured and muscular is he  
 He has majestic walk  
 And entices others to talk  
 A true peacock he might really be

## Butterfly

Woke up this morning ready to fly  
 Each day's an adventure for you and I  
 Spread the coloured wings  
 Sweet songs to sing  
 Move around like a lady pretty



U  
N  
I  
T

## 4

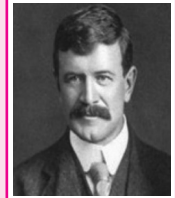
## WITH THE PHOTOGRAPHER

Stephen Leacock

## SUPPLEMENTARY

## About the Author

<b>Author</b>	: Stephen P. H. Butler Leacock
<b>Born</b>	: 18th December, 1869 - Canada.
<b>Education</b>	: Upper Canada College
<b>Career</b>	: • Writer • Teacher • Political Scientist
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • Sunshine Sketches of a Little Town • Arcadian Adventures • With the Idle Rich • Economic Prosperity in the British Empire • The Dawn of Canadian History • Moonbeams from the Larger Lunacy • The Unsolved Riddle of Social Justice • My Discovery of England
<b>Awards</b>	: • Governor General's Literary Awards for English Language non - fiction • Lource Pierce Medal
<b>Died</b>	: 14th November, 1944.



## Warm Up

Page: 132

## 1. What are the occasions when photographs are taken?

<b>e.g. birthday parties</b>	Valedictory functions
Wedding ceremony	Tours
Graduation Day	Cultural programmes
Inaugural functions	School Annual Day

## 2. Why are photographs taken?

**e.g. to freeze our favourite moments**

For official purposes like passport, driving licence, voters' ID

To show them to others

To relive the past experience

An evidence

## SUMMARY

Stephen Leacock was a Canadian teacher, political scientist, writer and humourist. He in his short story 'With the Photographer' describes his experiences at a photo studio. Once the author went to a photographer. He wanted his photograph taken. The photographer looked at the author and said that his face was quite wrong. The author accepted that he knew that his face was wrong. The photographer added that it would look better if it was three quarters full. He also discussed various types of faces found in the world.

The photographer wanted to take the best photograph and wanted to prove his skill. He took the author's head in his hands and twisted it sideways and looked at it. He didn't like the author's head. He

asked him to open the mouth and then close it. He felt that the author's ears were bad so he asked him to drop them a little more. He asked the author to roll his eyes under the eyelids, to put the hands on knees, to turn the face little upward, to expand the lungs, to bend the neck, to contract the face. He wanted the best feature and expression of the author so he took much time in all type of arrangements, suggestions and criticism.

The photographer was continuously criticizing the author's face as he felt that the face was not appropriate for a photograph. The author felt humiliated. He couldn't bear the insult anymore. He had lived with it for forty years and he knew its faults. Though it was not beautiful, it was his face- the only one that the author had. Thus because of humiliation and unfair comments about his face, the author was angry with the photographer. As the author started to rise from the seat, the photographer took his photograph. At that time the photographer looked pleased as he had caught the features just in a moment of animation.

On Saturday, the author went back to the photographer to see the proof. The photographer showed his photo. Looking at it the author was surprised as the photographer made so many changes in his eyes, eyebrow, mouth etc. He removed the eyebrows and retouched the eyes. The photograph didn't look like the author's photo at all. So the author asked "is it me? The photographer was a strange kind of person. He made so many changes in the photograph of the author's face that it did not look like his own. He removed the eyebrows and he had retouched the eyes. He wanted to fix ears all right in the print. There was a process then for removing the ears entirely.

The author wanted a photograph that would have looked like himself. He wanted something that would depict the face as God gave it to him. He wanted something that his friends might have kept after his death to reconcile them to his loss. But what the author wanted was not done at all. The photographer had almost changed author's eyes, eyebrow, mouth etc. The photograph never looked like the author's face. So angrily he asked the photographer to keep the photo for himself.


**GLOSSARY**

Page: 135

drooping	–	bending
unwarrantable	–	illegal, wrongful
pursuits	–	quest
frantic	–	mad, desperate
grave	–	serious
boundless	–	limitless
ceased	–	stopped
trifle	–	bit
staggering	–	shaking or vibrating
animation	–	excitement
beckoned	–	called
superficies	–	surface / outer face
withering scorn	–	disapproving hatred
depict	–	show, give a picture of
reconcile	–	to comfort and heal
emboss	–	cause to bulge out
bauble	–	a thing of no value

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

1. Based on your understanding of the story, answer the following questions in two or three sentences each.

a. **Why did the author go to the photo studio?**

The author went to the photo studio to get him photographed.

b. **Describe the photographer.**

The photographer was a man with a bend on his back. He wore a gray suit and he had dim eyes.

c. **Bring out the significance of what Leacock was reading at the photographer's.**

He read some very old magazines like 'Ladies Companion', 'The Girls' Magazine' and 'The Infants Journal'. All the magazines were old numbers and they had no connection with him.

d. **Why did Leacock assume that the photographer was praying?**

The photographer entered into the black cloth which covered the camera and then he was very quiet there. So he thought he was praying.

e. **How did the inner room get light?**

The inner room received the sunlight that filtered through a sheet of factory cotton. It was hung against a frosted skylight.

f. **Why did the photographer take a long time to photograph Leacock?**

The photographer thought that Leacock's face was quite wrong and he wanted to get a good photo out of it. He tried to make lot of adjustments. So the photographer took a long time to photograph Leacock.

g. **What angered the author?**

The photographer asked him to adjust all the parts of body like ears, eyes, hands, face etc. Finally he said that still he did not like his face. This angered the author.

h. **Why did the photographer feel happy after taking the photograph?**

Page: 136

The photographer was happy after taking the photograph because he could click the camera at the right time with animation.

i. **Why did Leacock visit the studio on Saturday?**

Leacock visited the studio on Saturday because the photographer had asked him to come back on Saturday to see the proof of his photo.

j. **How did the author react on seeing his photograph?**

The photo did not resemble him. So he asked 'Is it me?' He showed his unhappiness to the photographer.

k. **What changes had the photographer effected on Leacock's face in the picture?**

The photographer had made changes in the eyes, eyebrows and the mouth.

l. **What was the human side of the photographer?**

The photographer suggested some ideas to make his photo look better. That was the human side of the photographer.

m. **Why was the photographer proud to receive Leacock on Saturday?**

He was proud to receive Leacock on Saturday because he was about to show the photo in which he had used his talents and knowledge to change certain parts to make it look better.

**n. What was the only similarity between Leacock's face and the photograph?**

Only the ears in the photograph had similarity with his face.

**2. Based on your understanding of the lesson, complete the sentence given below to make a summary of the story 'with the Photographer'.**

- a. The narrator went to the photographer to get his photograph taken.
- b. The photographer made the author wait for one hour.
- c. While waiting in the studio the narrator kept reading some old magazines.
- d. The photographer told him to come inside.
- e. The narrator got angry because the photographer was going on criticising his face.
- f. The photographer was pleased after the photograph had been taken.
- g. He was called on Saturday to see the proof of the photograph.
- h. On seeing the photograph the narrator was upset.
- i. The photographer had made changes on his eyes, eyebrows and mouth.
- j. The photographer did not look like the narrator.
- k. The narrator was frustrated as the photographer had made many changes to make the photo look better.
- l. He left the studio saying that the photo was a worthless bauble.

**3. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words.****a. Stephen Leacock's visit to the photo studio turns out to be an annoying experience for him. Discuss citing relevant instances from the story.**

Leacock in a photo studio – get his photo taken – kept the camera – serious look – commented on his face – instructed him – irritated Leacock – to get up – clicked the camera – made many changes – keep photo for him

Stephen Leacock describes his experiences in a photo studio where he wanted to get his photograph taken. The photographer was a drooping man who looked like a scientist. Leacock waited for one hour and he was called inside. He kept the camera in the middle of the room and had a look at Leacock. He gave a serious look at him and said that his face was not good and Leacock accepted it. He came out of the camera and adjusted Leacock's head and hand. Even then he was not satisfied. He asked Leacock to open his mouth and then close it. He said that the ears were not good and gave lot of instructions which irritated Leacock. Then Leacock angrily said that he was living with his face so far and he loved it. As he was about to get up the photographer clicked and the photo was taken. When he went to the studio again to see the proof, he was shocked to see that many changes had been made to make the photo look better. Leacock came out of the studio angrily asking the photographer to keep the photo for him, as it was a worthless bauble.

**b. "To me it is a worthless bauble." Why did the photographer's touch of technical expertise appear a worthless bauble to Leacock?**

Leacock in a photo studio – get his photo taken – kept the camera – serious look – adjusted face – not satisfied – commented on face – irritated – about to get up – clicked the camera – changed a lot – looked better – no resemblance to him – explained changes – angry Leacock – keep the photo for the photographer

Stephen Leacock describes his experiences in a photo studio where he wanted his photograph taken. The photographer was a drooping man who looked like a scientist. Leacock waited

for one hour and he was called inside. He kept the camera in the middle of the room and had a look at Leacock. He gave a serious look at him and said that his face was not good and Leacock accepted it. He came out of the camera and adjusted Leacock's head and hand. Even then he was not satisfied. He gave lot of instructions to adjust his ears, eyes and mouth. Leacock was irritated and said that he was happy to live with this face. As he was about to get up the photographer clicked and the photo was taken. When he went to the studio again to see the proof, he was shocked to see that many changes had been made to make the photo look better. The photo did not resemble Leacock. The photographer explained that he had changed his eyes, eyebrows and mouth were retouched to get a better look. He said that he used modern technology to do such changes. Since it did not resemble him, it had no value for him. So it was a worthless bauble to Leacock. He asked the photographer to keep it for himself and his friends.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words.

**1. Describe Leacock's experiences with the photographer?**

Stephen Leacock was a Canadian teacher, political scientist, writer and humourist. He in his short story 'With the Photographer' describes his experiences at a photo studio. Once the author went to a photographer to have his photograph taken. The photographer looked at the author and said that his face was quite wrong. The author accepted that he knew that his face was wrong. He took the author's head in his hands and twisted it sideways and looked at it. He didn't like the author's head, mouth, ears etc. He wanted the best feature and expression of the author so he took much time in all type of arrangement, suggestions and criticism. The author felt humiliated. As the author started to rise in anger from the seat, the photographer took his photograph in a moment of animation. On Saturday, the author went back to the photographer to see the proof. Looking at it the author was surprised as the photographer made so many changes in his eyes, eyebrow, mouth etc. So the author asked "is it me? The photographer narrated the changes he had made. The photograph never looked like the author's face. So angrily he asked the photographer to keep the photo for himself.

**2. Why did the photograph not resemble Leacock? Was he happy with the photographer's work?**

Stephen Leacock was a Canadian teacher, political scientist, writer and humourist. He in his short story 'With the Photographer' describes his experiences at a photo studio. Once the author went to a photographer to have his photograph taken. The photographer looked at the author and said that his face was quite wrong. The author accepted that he knew that his face was wrong. The photographer was continuously criticizing the author's face. As the author started to rise in anger from the seat, the photographer took his photograph in a moment of animation. On Saturday, the author went back to the photographer to see the proof. Looking at it the author was surprised as the photographer made so many changes in his eyes, eyebrow, mouth etc. He removed the eyebrows and retouched the eyes. The photograph didn't look like the author's photo at all. He made so many changes in the photograph of the author's face that it did not look like his own. He removed the eyebrows and he had retouched the eyes. He wanted to fix ears all right in the print. The author wanted a photograph that would have looked like himself. He wanted something that would depict the face as God gave it to him. But what the author wanted was not done at all. The photographer had almost changed author's eyes, eyebrow, mouth etc. So the photograph did not look like the author's face.

UNIT

4

ICT CORNER

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

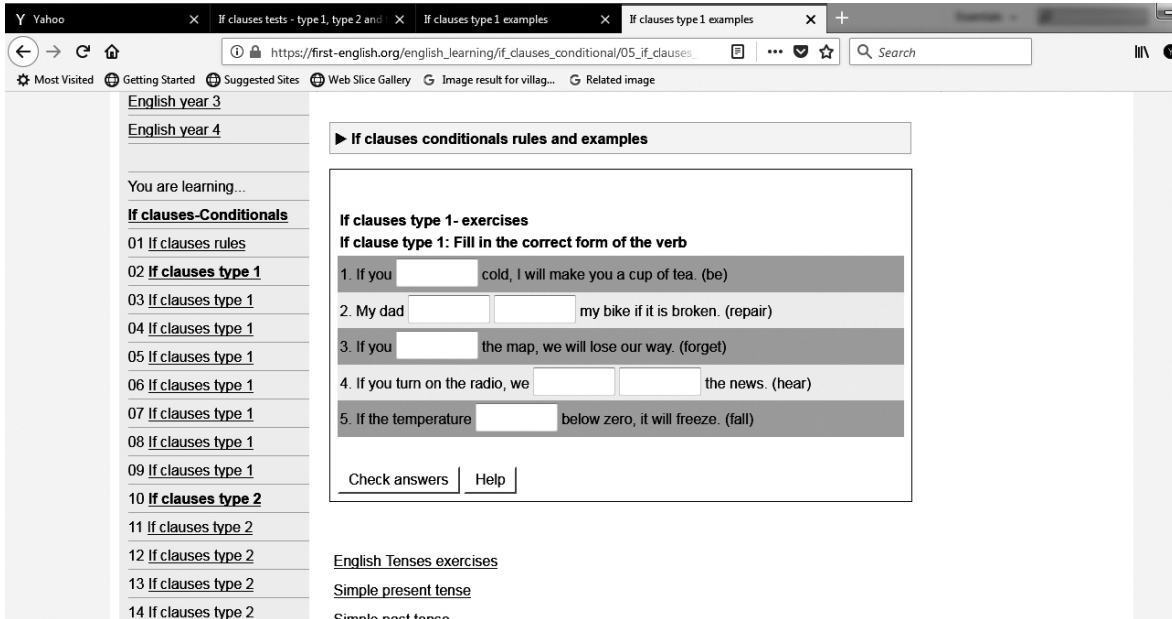
PLAYING GAMES

**If clauses - Test - if clauses type 1 and type 2**  
 Fill in the correct form of the verb.

1. If Jake  the money, he will go to America. (have)
2. If I had a lot of money, I  some to charity. (give)
3. If the girls  shopping, they would have bought some new shoes. (go)
4. Jake will bring some CDs if he  some good ones. (find)
5. If I  her, I would wear the red top. (be)
6. If Pete were hungry, he  a hamburger. (eat)
7. If we  to the café, we will drink tea. (go)
8. Ben  to a restaurant if he had more time. (go)
9. If the teacher corrected the tests, the pupils  the marks. (know)
10. Ben will go to the club if his friend  with him. (go)

Simple Past Tense  
 Present Perfect

Answers			
1. has	2. would give	3. had gone	4. finds
5. were	6. would eat	7. go	8. would go
9. would know	10. goes		



The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL [https://first-english.org/english\\_learning/if\\_clauses\\_conditional/05\\_if\\_clauses...](https://first-english.org/english_learning/if_clauses_conditional/05_if_clauses...). The page content includes a sidebar with navigation links for 'English year 3', 'English year 4', and 'If clauses-Conditionals'. The main content area is titled 'If clauses type 1- exercises' and contains five numbered exercises for 'If clause type 1'. Each exercise has a blank space for an answer.

**If clauses type 1- exercises**  
**If clause type 1: Fill in the correct form of the verb**

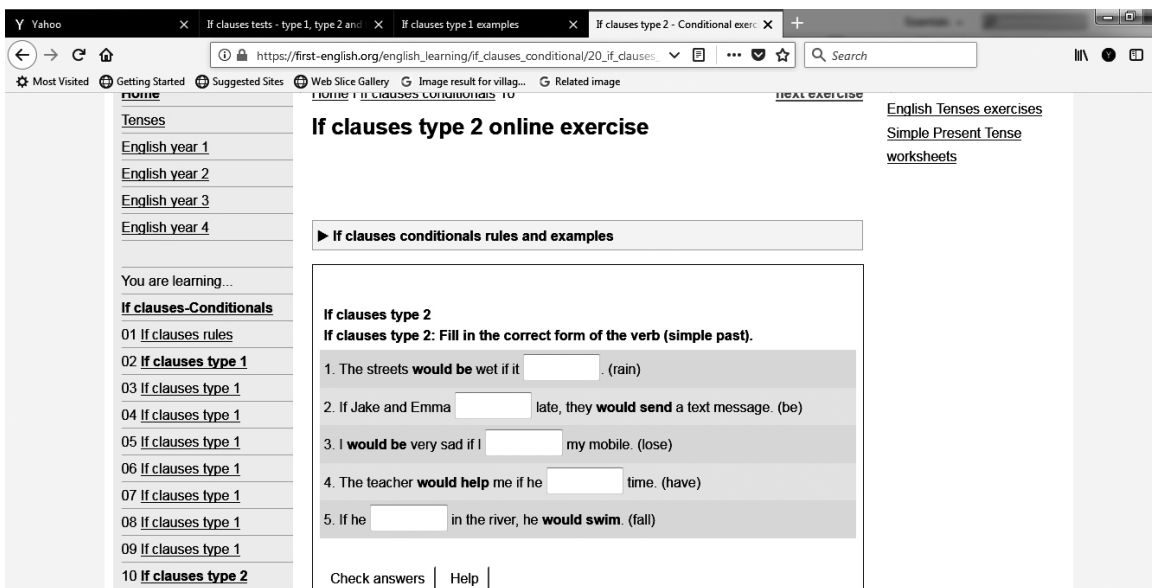
1. If you  cold, I will make you a cup of tea. (be)
2. My dad   my bike if it is broken. (repair)
3. If you  the map, we will lose our way. (forget)
4. If you turn on the radio, we   the news. (hear)
5. If the temperature  below zero, it will freeze. (fall)

Check answers | Help

This website uses cookies to ensure you get the best experience on this website. [More Infos](#)

I agree!

Answers				
1. are	2. will repair	3. forget	4. can hear	5. falls



The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL [https://first-english.org/english\\_learning/if\\_clauses\\_conditional/20\\_if\\_clauses...](https://first-english.org/english_learning/if_clauses_conditional/20_if_clauses...). The page content includes a sidebar with navigation links for 'Tenses', 'English year 1', 'English year 2', 'English year 3', and 'English year 4'. The main content area is titled 'If clauses type 2 online exercise' and contains five numbered exercises for 'If clauses type 2'. Each exercise has a blank space for an answer.

**If clauses type 2 online exercise**

**If clauses type 2**  
**If clauses type 2: Fill in the correct form of the verb (simple past).**

1. The streets **would be** wet if it  (rain)
2. If Jake and Emma  late, they **would send** a text message. (be)
3. I **would be** very sad if I  my mobile. (lose)
4. The teacher **would help** me if he  time. (have)
5. If he  in the river, he **would swim**. (fall)

Check answers | Help

This website uses cookies to ensure you get the best experience on this website. [More Infos](#)

I agree!

Answers				
1. rained	2. were	3. lost	4. had	5. fell



UNIT

5

CONVOCAATION ADDRESS

Dr. Arignar Annadurai

PROSE

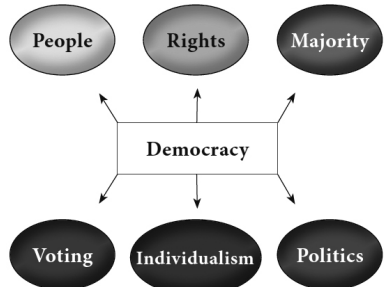
About the Author

**Author** : Dr. Arignar Annadurai  
**Born** : 15th September, 1909 - Kancheepuram.  
**Popularly Known as** : Arignar Anna - Tamil Nadu Chief Minister (1967 - 69)  
**Career** : • Teacher • Drama Artist • PlayWright • Screen Play Writer  
 • Short Story Writer • Novelist • Essayist • Orator • Politician  
**Famous Works** : • Velaikkari • Nallathambi • Or Iravu • Rangoon Radha • Parvathi BA  
**Awards** : • The Chubb Fellowship at Yale University, USA.  
 • Honorary Doctorate, Annamalai University.  
**Died** : 3rd February 1969.



Warm Up

A. Work in pairs. Look at the mind map below and add a few other features of democracy you can think of. Share your answers with the class.

	<p><b>e.g. sharing and caring</b></p> <p>Freedom of speech and writing</p> <p>Right to ownership of property</p> <p>Enjoying privacy</p> <p>Freedom to follow any religion</p> <p>Freedom to follow any political party</p>
---	---

B. Given below is a list of items or features you find in a good school. Study the list and classify the items as individual and common.

textbooks – uniform – smart classroom – laboratory – competent teachers – library – mid-day meals – blackboard – stationery – playground – sports equipment-washrooms

Individual	Common
<p><b>e.g. textbooks</b></p> <p>uniform, competent teachers, stationery, sports equipment.</p>	<p><b>playground</b></p> <p>smart classroom, laboratory, library, mid-day meals, blackboard, washrooms.</p>

**C. Who provides these common facilities? Tick the appropriate service.**

- ❖ Parents
- ❖ Educational Institutions (✓)
- ❖ The Department of Education (✓)
- ❖ Social Service Organisation (✓)
- ❖ Other agencies (✓)

The common facilities you enjoy such as the playground, classroom etc. help you achieve your academic, vocational or any other goal in life. They are the facilities created for students' welfare by society.

**D. Discuss the aspect with your partner and share your views on how students can give back to society.**

Page: 139

The common facilities provided by the society help the students achieve their goal in life. In return they should contribute their part for the welfare of the society. They should educate the people on how they can make use of equal educational and employment opportunities. They should make them aware of their political and economic rights, common law and judicial system.

**SUMMARY**

'Convocation Address' is an excerpt from the convocation address given by former Chief Minister of Tamil Nadu Mr. Annadurai in Annamalai University. He was a great orator both in Tamil and English.

He thanks the institution for having invited him to address the august gathering. He is happy to wish the young graduates a bright and prosperous future. He decides not to offer any new thoughts. He wants to repeat the important principles which were already offered by those who advised in the past. This age is the age of common man and he claims to represent him in all his toughness. Universities are the storehouse of knowledge and the developing ground for wisdom and service. Universities should help their students to better themselves to improve the society. Now we have come out of autocracy and we are in the era of democracy.

In the past, educated people did not work for the common man. They adorned the palaces and courts. They never represented the problems of the common man. They were meant only for high philosophy and poetry. Today the role of University is different. It is not restricted as in the past. It has to train the youth before he is asked to do his duty as the citizen of a democracy. The present youth needs patience, perseverance, confidence and faith in himself and others before he takes up the responsibility in the society. The major responsibility of the universities is to make out of the youth as individual fitted and equipped to make democracy fruitful and effective.

He quotes from Dr. S. Radhakrishnans' address in the University of Brussels. Democracy requires more qualities than other forms of governments for its proper functioning. The true spirit of democracy can be developed in the universities. In universities we have to recall the struggles of the past and realise the dangers, the challenges and the opportunities of the present.

The immediate concern of all graduates is to find a decent job. But it should not be the only objective. Their university education is financially helped by the society consisting of farmers and labourers. The graduates should think of repaying the society. They should contribute to enrich the financial situation of the country. Society has the right to expect adequate return from the graduates. He knows that the graduates will face a lot of difficulties in the society. The world they enter may be different from what they have learnt about it. But in the past people with conviction have been carrying such social works under unfavourable conditions. He is confident that the graduate are being sent into the world with adequate knowledge and skill to face the challenges.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 142

conferred	–	granted a title degree, benefit or right
reiterate	–	say or do again
enunciated	–	spoke clearly
ruggedness	–	strength / roughness
repositories	–	storehouses
emissaries	–	deputies
eschewed	–	have nothing to do with / abandon
autocracy	–	government by one ruler
feudal	–	having nothing to do with the middle ages
confronting	–	aggressively resisting
secluded shares	–	isolated areas
cloistered	–	restricted / isolated
perseverance	–	continued effort, stead fastness
inherent	–	inborn
perils	–	dangers and risks
indebted	–	obliged to repay
tillers	–	person who produces crops / cultivation
toilers	–	hard workers
replenish	–	refill
despondent	–	depressed, frustrated
sermons	–	speeches on moral subject
endowed	–	gifted
crusade	–	campaign for a good cause
inheritors	–	successors
lustre	–	glow of reflected light

## MEANINGS

unique	matchless	conferred	granted
august	grand, dignified	prosperous	successful
appropriate	suitable	reiterate	repeat
cardinal	basic	enunciated	spoken
annotations	clarifications	various	several
regrets	repentance	ruggedness	toughness
ethics	morals	repositories	storehouses
nursing	developing	emissaries	representatives
prominent	outstanding, important	equipped	prepared
task	duty	eschewed	avoided

autocracy	government by one ruler	era	period
monarchical	rule by the king	feudal	outdated
adorn	decorate	gilded	gold-plated
mansions	castles	eminent	famous
confronting	challenging	masses	crowds
content	satisfied	secluded spheres	isolated areas
din and noise	unpleasant noise	dazzling	glittering
cloistered	restricted	enlarged	extended
domain	area	trim	cut something to look better
kindle	encourage	perseverance	persistence
inherent	inborn	origin	source
potential	possible	fashion out	make
fruitful	successful	require	need
perils	danger	concern	anxiety
acquire	get, obtain	decent	good enough standard
sole	only	indebted	obliged to repay
tillers	farmers	toilers	workers with hard labour
submit	accept	replenish	refill
coffer	safe in treasury	adequate	acceptable
toning	improving	alleys	small lanes
dingy	dark, dirty	solace	comfort
afflicted	affected	despondent	depressed, frustrated
sermons	speeches on moral subjects	seek	try to get
brush aside	keep aside	dim	darken
determination	strength of mind	inculcated	instructed
enthroned	crowned, praised	decried	condemned
robust	strong	endowed	gifted
crusade	struggle for a good cause	aloft	high up
inheritors	successors	legacy	heritage
lustre	shine		

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

- Thankful as I am for the unique honour **conferred** on me by this institution.
  - granted
  - removed
  - attached
  - attempted
- ....but only **reiterate** some of the cardinal principal enunciated by those who offered their advice in the past.
  - reduce
  - repeat
  - add
  - inform

3. ....but only reiterate some of the cardinal principal **enunciated** by those who offered their advice in the past.  
a) situated                      b) placed                      c) spoken                      d) left out
4. I do claim to represent him all his **ruggedness**.  
a) refinement                      b) toughness                      c) understanding                      d) doubts
5. Universities, as the **repositories** of knowledge and the nursing ground for the emissaries of thought have got a prominent role.  
a) giver                      b) claimer                      c) inviter                      d) storehouse
6. Universities, as the repositories of knowledge and the nursing ground for the **emissaries** of thought have got a prominent role.  
a) gathering                      b) assembly                      c) representatives                      d) group
7. We have **eschewed** monarchy and autocracy and have inaugurated the era of democracy.  
a) accepted                      b) avoided                      c) informed                      d) believed
8. We have eschewed monarchy and **autocracy** and have inaugurated the era of democracy.  
a) rule by one ruler                      b) rule by people                      c) rule by a group                      d) rule by few
9. During the **feudal** days, Universities had to train scholars and poets to adorn the chambers of royalty.  
a) medieval                      b) modern                      c) recent                      d) fresh
10. .... nor were eminent scholars asked to face the problems **confronting** the masses.  
a) showing                      b) challenging                      c) inviting                      d) giving
11. They were content to work in **secluded** spheres.  
a) clear                      b) open                      c) different                      d) isolated
12. The role of the University today is not **cloistered** and confined as in the past.  
a) open                      b) restricted                      c) cleared                      d) closed
13. ....a task which kindles sweet hopes but which demands patience and **perseverance**.  
a) interest                      b) commitment                      c) demanding                      d) persistence
14. ....confidence in his **inherent** ability to shoulder the responsibilities  
a) intend                      b) inborn                      c) selected                      d) achieved
15. ....realises the **perils** and possibilities, the challenges are opportunities of the present.  
a) danger                      b) proper                      c) property                      d) safety
16. ....for which you are deeply **indebted** to the community of which you are a member.  
a) obliged                      b) received                      c) wounded                      d) faithful
17. ....a good portion of the revenue comes from the **tillers** and the toilers  
a) machines                      b) people                      c) farmers                      d) teachers
18. ....a good portion of the revenue comes from the tillers and the **toilers**  
a) tailors                      b) labourers                      c) holders                      d) rich

19. Unless you **replenish** it richly, coming generation will find only an empty coffer.  
 a) spent                      b) open                      c) require                      d) refill
20. ....hope unto the **despondent** and anew life unto every one  
 a) individual                      b) group                      c) depressed                      d) farmers
21. A continuous stream of men and women **endowed** with the spirit of service have been carrying on the crusade successfully.  
 a) removed                      b) gifted                      c) entry                      d) deputed
22. Thankful as I am for the **unique** honour conferred on me by this institution.  
 a) one of the                      b) matchless                      c) great                      d) systematic
23. ....wishing them all a bright and **prosperous** future  
 a) needy                      b) succeeding                      c) successful                      d) immediate
24. It is not easy task to place **appropriate** guidelines before them.  
 a) imaginative                      b) real                      c) clever                      d) suitable
25. This is the age of common man – whatever the **regrets** some might have.  
 a) repentance                      b) repetitions                      c) duplications                      d) strength

Answers									
1. a	2. b	3. c	4. b	5. d	6. c	7. b	8. a	9. a	10. b
11. d	12. b	13. b	14. b	15. a	16. a	17. c	18. b	19. d	20. c
21. b	22. b	23. c	24. d	25. a					

**SELF EVALUATION**

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. I stand before this **august** assembly today to deliver the Convocation address.   
 a) large                      b) small                      c) grand                      d) known
2. ....but only reiterate some of the **cardinal** principal enunciated by those who offered their advice in the past.   
 a) basic                      b) important                      c) new                      d) different
3. ....perhaps with **annotations** here and there bringing to bear the lay-man’s point of view   
 a) information                      b) clarifications                      c) quotations                      d) hardships
4. ....the findings of experts in **various** fields connected with education   
 a) same                      b) novel                      c) finding                      d) several
5. It is philosophy or politics, **ethics** or economics are certainly meant for him.   
 a) rules                      b) guidelines                      c) moral                      d) immoral
6. Universities, as the repositories of knowledge and the nursing ground for the emissaries of thought have got a **prominent** role.   
 a) unknown                      b) possible                      c) available                      d) important

7. ....more and more individuals get themselves **equipped** for the task of bettering society  
 a) prepared                      b) trying                      c) disinterested                      d) imminent
8. ....more and more individuals get themselves equipped for the **task** of bettering society  
 a) benefit                      b) trial                      c) duty                      d) attempt
9. We have eschewed **monarchy** and autocracy and have inaugurated the era of democracy.  
 a) rule by people                      b) rule by the rich                      c) rule by the majority                      d) rule by the king
10. We have eschewed monarchy and autocracy and have inaugurated the **era** of democracy.  
 a) formerly                      b) earlier                      c) period                      d) group
11. During the feudal days, Universities had to train scholars and poets to **adorn** the chambers of royalty.  
 a) buy                      b) sell                      c) decorate                      d) admire
12. ....nor were **eminent** scholars asked to face the problems confronting the masses.  
 a) unknown                      b) strong                      c) uneducated                      d) famous
13. ....nor were eminent scholars asked to face the problems confronting the **masses**.  
 a) crowds                      b) plants                      c) universities                      d) soldiers
14. They were **content** to work in secluded spheres.  
 a) materials                      b) lessons                      c) satisfied                      d) controlled
15. They were content to work in secluded **spheres**.  
 a) round                      b) areas                      c) shapes                      d) colours
16. ....secluded spheres far from the **din and noise** of the common man.  
 a) unpleasant noise                      b) pleasant noise                      c) big noise                      d) slight noise
17. ....poetry which in turn was to be converted into **dazzling** garments.  
 a) trailing                      b) cooking                      c) costly                      d) shining
18. Its function has been **enlarged** – not in fundamentals but in domain.  
 a) restricted                      b) controlled                      c) extended                      d) limited
19. ....a task which **kindles** sweet hopes but which demands patience and perseverance.  
 a) encourages                      b) discourages                      c) fire                      d) lengthens
20. The common man has become the **origin** of a potential ruler.  
 a) source                      b) original                      c) ability                      d) interest
21. The common man has become the origin of a **potential** ruler.  
 a) good                      b) bad                      c) possible                      d) successful
22. ....the responsibility today of the universities is to **fashion out** of him an individual fitted and equipped for the task of making democracy fruitful and effective.  
 a) modernize                      b) cut down                      c) given out                      d) make

23. ....the responsibility today of the universities is to fashion out of him an individual fitted and equipped for the task of making democracy **fruitful** and effective.  
 a) tasty                      b) successful                      c) failure                      d) continue
24. For its proper functioning democracy **requires** more qualities than other forms of governments.  
 a) fails                      b) succeeds                      c) needs                      d) rejects
25. ....the immediate **concern** of every individual is to acquire the means for a decent living.  
 a) thinking                      b) solution                      c) asking                      d) anxiety
26. ....the immediate concern of every individual is to **acquire** the means for a decent living.  
 a) live                      b) get                      c) see                      d) look
27. ....but that ought not to be the **sole** objective.  
 a) foot                      b) mind                      c) only                      d) few
28. ....society has got a right to expect an **adequate** return from you.  
 a) sufficient                      b) insufficient                      c) immediate                      d) total
29. ....in **toning** up society, in bringing light into the dark alleys.  
 a) shaping                      b) making                      c) improving                      d) spoiling
30. ....sunshine into **dingy** places, solace into the afflicted.  
 a) bright                      b) dark                      c) broad                      d) lighted
31. ....sunshine into dingy places, **solace** into the afflicted.  
 a) unpleasant                      b) hold                      c) intent                      d) comfort
32. ....sunshine into dingy places, solace into the **afflicted**.  
 a) affected                      b) poor                      c) rich                      d) clever
33. ....widely different from the principles **inculcated** in you.  
 a) interested                      b) instructed                      c) immersed                      d) removed
34. You may find self-seekers enthroned and the patient worker **decried**.  
 a) condemned                      b) interested                      c) immersed                      d) complained
35. I admit that the environment of such that even people with **robust** optimism will be discouraged.  
 a) weak                      b) lean                      c) thin                      d) strong

**OPPOSITES**

appropriate	×	improper	limitation	×	freedom
offer	×	denial	various	×	same
connected	×	disconnected	regret	×	pleasure
certainly	×	doubtfully	wisdom	×	foolishness
prominent	×	unimportant	eminent	×	insignificant
costly	×	cheap	confined	×	liberated

enlarged	×	compressed	kindle	×	extinguish
patience	×	agitation	faith	×	disbelief
confidence	×	hesitation	ability	×	inability, ignorance
potential	×	lacking	fruitful	×	worthless
effective	×	weak, ineffective	decent	×	indecent, poor
ignore	×	accept	adequate	×	inadequate, unsuitable
hope	×	despair	ease	×	difficult
comfort	×	discomfort, misery	lustre	×	dullness
entire	×	partly			

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

- I do claim to represent him in all his ruggedness.  
a) softness                      b) clarity                      c) foolishness                      d) doubts
- Those were days when numbers did not count, nor were eminent scholars asked to face problems confronting the masses.  
a) significant                      b) insignificant                      c) unimportant                      d) improper
- The role of the University today is not cloistered and confined as in the past.  
a) restricted                      b) meant                      c) liberated                      d) kept
- ....demands patience and perseverance, faith and confidence, faith in himself and in others  
a) trust                      b) steady                      c) hesitation                      d) undecided
- The common man has become the origin of a potential ruler ....  
a) hidden                      b) likely                      c) possible                      d) lacking
- ....solace into the afflicted, hope unto the despondent and a new life unto every one  
a) encouraged                      b) discouraged                      c) dejected                      d) disheartened
- It is not easy task to place appropriate guidelines before them.  
a) suitable                      b) proper                      c) improper                      d) helpful
- I shall not attempt to offer original ideas.  
a) give                      b) deny                      c) restrict                      d) close
- Wisdom and service have got prominent role to play.  
a. cleverness                      b. knowledge                      c) insight                      d) foolishness
- Its function has been enlarged – not in its fundamentals but its domain.  
a) compressed                      b) developed                      c) extended                      d) improved

#### Answers

1. a	2. b	3. c	4. c	5. d	6. a	7. c	8. b	9. d	10. a
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

**SELF EVALUATION**

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. The fact that I am conscious of my own limitation gives me a sense of relief.
 

a) freedom	b) aspiration	c) understanding	d) knowledge	<input type="checkbox"/>
------------	---------------	------------------	--------------	--------------------------
2. This is the age of the common man – whatever the regrets some might have
 

a) doubts	b) misgivings	c) repentance	d) pleasure	<input type="checkbox"/>
-----------	---------------	---------------	-------------	--------------------------
3. It is philosophy or politics, ethics or economics, are certainly meant for him.
 

a) clearly	b) doubtfully	c) strongly	d) weakly	<input type="checkbox"/>
------------	---------------	-------------	-----------	--------------------------
4. Wisdom and service have got prominent role to play.
 

a) important	b) unwanted	c) unimportant	d) unnecessary	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-------------	----------------	----------------	--------------------------
5. ....a task which kindles sweet hopes but which demands patience and perseverance
 

a) controls	b) spreads	c) lights	d) extinguishes	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	------------	-----------	-----------------	--------------------------
6. ....a task which kindles sweet hopes but which demands patience and perseverance
 

a) calmness	b) agitation	c) request	d) silence	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	--------------	------------	------------	--------------------------
7. ....demands patience and perseverance, faith and confidence, faith in himself and in others
 

a) disbelief	b) misunderstanding	c) misuse	d) independent	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	---------------------	-----------	----------------	--------------------------
8. ....confidence in his inborn ability to shoulder the responsibilities
 

a) verified	b) acquired	c) normal	d) implicit	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	-------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------------
9. ....fitted and equipped for the task of making democracy fruitful and effective
 

a) worthless	b) useful	c) successful	d) removed	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------	---------------	------------	--------------------------
10. ....fitted and equipped for the task of making democracy fruitful and effective

a) active	b) adequate	c) weak	d) efficient	<input type="checkbox"/>
-----------	-------------	---------	--------------	--------------------------
11. ....is to acquire the means for a decent living
 

a) undecent	b) indecent	c) uncontrolled	d) strong	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	-------------	-----------------	-----------	--------------------------
12. This is the first motivation for all human activity and no one can ignore it.
 

a) reject	b) include	c) inhale	d) accept	<input type="checkbox"/>
-----------	------------	-----------	-----------	--------------------------
13. ....solace into the afflicted, hope unto the despondent and a new life unto every one
 

a) discomfort	b) comfort	c) conformation	d) confrontation	<input type="checkbox"/>
---------------	------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------------------
14. ....solace into the afflicted, hope unto the despondent and a new life unto every one
 

a) affected	b) pleased	c) distress	d) torture	<input type="checkbox"/>
-------------	------------	-------------	------------	--------------------------
15. ....solace into the afflicted, hope unto the despondent and a new life unto every one
 

a) faith	b) distress	c) despair	d) inspire	<input type="checkbox"/>
----------	-------------	------------	------------	--------------------------

For better understanding.

Page: 139 - 141

**1. What does the speaker try to convey in the beginning of his speech?**

The speaker wants to convey that he is not going to offer any original ideas. Instead he would explain the basic principles which have been already given by others.

**2. How can a university trim and train, guide and lead a person to function better in society?**

University kindles hope which demands patience and continued effort. It creates faith and confidence in the students. It makes them individuals ready for the task of making democracy useful and effective.

**3. According to Dr. S. Radhakrishnan universities ensure the democratic way of life for the future generations. How?**

Universities can develop the true spirit of democracy, appreciation of others' points of view and adjustment of difference through discussions.

**4. List the contributions of the educated youth to society.**

The educated youth can enable the next generation to lead a better life. They should refill the empty coffer.

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 143

**A. Based on your reading of the speech answer the following questions briefly in a sentence or two.**

**1. Who does the speaker claim to represent?**

The speaker claims to represent the common man.

**2. Why are universities necessary for a society?**

Universities are necessary for the society because they are the storehouse of knowledge. They are the developing ground for the representatives of thought, wisdom and service. . Through the Universities many individuals get themselves equipped for the task of bettering society.

**3. What was the role of scholars and poets in olden days?**

In olden days scholars and poets adorned the chambers of the kings and the big palaces. Their knowledge was meant for the kings and lords, not for the common man.

**4. In what ways have universities improved the society?**

Universities kindle the hope of the people. They teach the people patience and perseverance. The common man has become a powerful ruler. Universities have made him fit for the task of making democracy fruitful and effective.

**5. Universities develop broad mindedness. How does Dr. Radhakrishnan drive home this idea?**

Dr. Radhakrishnan says that in universities we can develop the true spirit of democracy. We learn to appreciate others' view and adjust the differences through discussions.

**6. What should be the youngster's aim in life after their graduation?**

The youngsters' aim should be to obtain a decent living through their education.

**7. How can a graduate give back to his/her society?**

A graduate should realise that his higher education comes from the revenues collected from the common man. So the graduate should bring meaning to the life of common man. He/she has to bring hope and comfort into the afflicted people.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

Answer the following questions briefly in a sentence or two.

**1. Why is Anna thankful and to whom is he thankful?**

Anna is thankful because he has been given the honour of being invited to give the convocation address. He is thankful to the institution which has invited him to deliver the convocation address.

**2. To whom does Anna wish a bright and prosperous future?**

Anna wishes a bright and prosperous future to the fresh graduates.

**3. How does Anna want to proceed in his talk?**

Anna does not want to offer any new ideas; he wants to repeat some of the basic principles spoken clearly in the past by great scholars.

**4. For what purpose are the individuals getting equipped now?**

The individuals are getting equipped now for bettering the society because now we are not in the period of autocracy but we are in the period of democracy.

**5. What is the role of University to-day as mentioned by Anna?**

The role of university is not confined to-day; it is enlarged in its domain. It has to train and guide the students to do their duty as the citizens of democracy.

**6. What kind of task is ahead of the graduates as the citizen of democracy?**

They should be ready to do the task which kindles hopes. In turn it demands patience, perseverance, faith in oneself and others.

**TEXTUAL QUESTIONS****B. Based on your understanding, answer the following questions in three or four sentences each.****1. 'Wisdom was meant for the mansion, not for the market place.' What does the statement signify?**

In olden days scholars and poets adorned the chambers of the kings and the big palaces. Their knowledge was meant for the kings and lords not for the common man. The eminent scholars never took interest in dealing with the problems faced by the common man.

**2. According to the speaker, how should Universities mould the students of the present day?**

According to the speaker, the universities should kindle the hope which demands patience and perseverance. It should instill faith and self-confidence. His confidence should bring out his inherent ability to take up his responsibilities in the society.

**3. How does Aringar Anna highlight the duties and responsibilities of graduates to the society?**

The education increases the responsibilities of the graduates to society. He has to take up social service to tone up the society. He has to bring hope and solace into the afflicted and depressed people.

**4. Students are instilled with some of the essential values and skills by the universities. Enumerate them.**

The universities instil in the students the essential values of uplifting the society. The students are made to realise that the development of society is their duty. The skills like being patient, taking up responsibilities, having confidence in themselves are given by the universities.

**5. What are the hindrances a graduate faces in his/her way?**

The world would darken his/her hope, disturb his/her determination. The graduates may face some practices which are different from what he has learnt. He may find the selfish people succeed and the hard workers suffer. His strong optimism will be discouraged and he will be forced to take ease and comfortable path.

**C. Answer the following questions based on your understanding of the speech of Dr. Arigner Annadurai, adding your own ideas in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words.**

**1. How do Universities mould students apart from imparting academic education to them?**

Dr. C. N. Annadurai gave the convocation address at Annamalai University on November 18, 1967. In this address he enumerates the importance of universities and their part to play in the social development. The students who get graduated from universities receive not only academic education but also information which mould them for their life. They are trimmed and trained to do their prominent role in the society. What is given in universities like philosophy, politics and ethics is meant for him. Apart from this, universities are the storehouse of knowledge and the developing ground of wisdom and service. More and more individuals are getting trained to take up the responsibilities to develop the society in democracy. They are moulded to obtain a decent living. They are made to realise that money is not the only objective of education. They ought to give back to society what they receive from it. Their education is possible from the revenues collected from the common man. So they are moulded to give hope and comfort to the afflicted.

**2. The common men contribute to the maintenance of institutions of higher education. Explain this statement.**

Dr. C. N. Annadurai gave the convocation address at Annamalai University on November 18, 1967. In this address he enumerates the importance of universities and their part to play in the social development. He says that most of the money needed for maintaining institutions of higher education comes from the revenue collected from the common man. Man pays his tax and the government could run its projects only from the tax it collects from its people. Universities are run by the government in the same way from the tax money of the people. In this way the common men contribute to the maintenance of the institutions of higher education.

**3. How does the speaker highlight the importance of giving back to the society?**

Dr. C. N. Annadurai gave the convocation address at Annamalai University on November 18, 1967. In this address he enumerates the importance of universities and their part to play in the social development. He says that most of the money needed for maintaining institutions of higher education comes from the revenue collected from common man. Man pays his tax and the government could run its projects only from the tax it collects from its people. Universities are run by the government in the same way from the tax money of the people. So it has become the bounden duty of the graduates to give back to the society what it has given him. He has to refill the coffer which has become empty. He should tone up the society by showing brightness to the dark life of the people. He should bring solace to the afflicted people and hope to the depressed people.

4. **You are one of the fresh graduates at the convocation function of the University. You had the rare privilege of listening to the enlightening speech of Dr. Arignar Anna. Write a letter to your friend describing the core ideas of his speech and the impact of the speech on you.**

Chidambaram,

November 20, 1967.

Dear Sindhu,

I hope this letter will find you in good health. I am sure you are preparing for exam well. Two days back we had our convocation day. It was a proud moment for me to receive my Degree Certificate from our Chief Minister. I had the rare privilege of listening to the enlightening speech of our Chief Minister Dr. C.N. Annadurai. In his speech he clearly mentioned in the beginning that he represented only the common man. He explained the necessity of universities in our society. Universities are the storehouse of knowledge and developing ground for service to the society. I really liked one of his points. He said that the institutions of higher educations are maintained by the revenues collected from the common man. We get benefits from the hard work of farmers and labourers. So it is our duty to give back to the society. We should give hope to the afflicted people and solace to the depressed people. It was such a wonderful speech which I will never forget. I wish you all the best for your exam.

Yours lovingly,

Juliet.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

**Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 - 150 words.**

1. **What is the difference between universities of olden time and modern time?**

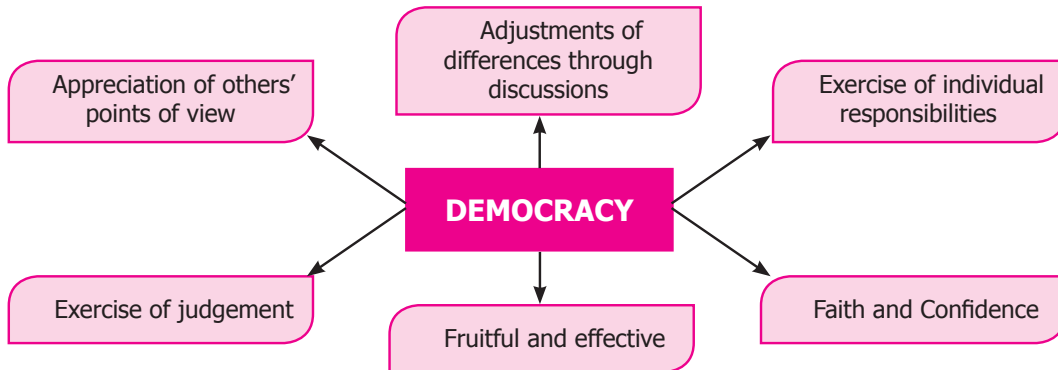
This age is the age of common man and he claims to represent him in all his toughness. Universities are the storehouse of knowledge and the developing ground for wisdom and service. University should help its students to better themselves to improve the society. Now we have come out of autocracy and we are in the era of democracy. In the past educated people did not work for the common man. They adorned the palaces and courts. They never represented the problems of the common man. They were meant only for high philosophy and poetry. Today the role of University is different. It is not restricted as in the past. It has to train the youth before he is asked to do the duty as the citizen of a democracy. The present youth needs patience, perseverance, confidence and faith in himself and others before he takes up the responsibility in the society. The major responsibility of the universities is to make out of the youth as individual fitted and equipped to make democracy fruitful and effective.

2. **What will be the difficulties faced by the graduates in the society?**

The immediate concern of all graduates is to find a decent job. But it should not be the only objective. Their university education is financially helped by the society consisting of farmers and labourers. The graduates should think of repaying the society. They should contribute to enrich the financial situation of the country. Society has the right to expect adequate return from the graduates. He knows that the graduates will face lot of difficulties in the society. The world they enter may be different from what they have learnt about it. But in the past people with conviction have been carrying of such social works under unfavourable conditions. He is confident that the graduates are being sent into the world with adequate knowledge and skill to face the challenges.

**VOCABULARY**

**A. Based on your understanding of paragraphs 6 and 7, complete the mindmap.**



**B. Words belonging to different semantic field.**

Page: 144

Now, read the following statements taken from Arignar Anna's address:

'The role of the **universities** today is not cloistered and confined as in the past.'

The highlighted word '**universities**' is used in the field of education. Find other words pertaining to the field of education from the speech of Anna.

**infrastructure, resources, schools, philosophy, politics, career, graduation, institution, convocation, theories, scholars, poetry.**

**C. Look at the following words and classify them according to their fields.**

**clinical orthopedic dividend operations fertile Carnatic diagnostics industries keyboard hacker desktop vocal cultivation organic unplugged disease harvest livestock mother-board investment internet proxy recycle bin orchestra trade hip-hop uprooting guitar cure contracts.**

<b>Music</b>	carnatic, vocal, unplugged, orchestra, hip-hop, guitar
<b>Agriculture</b>	fertile, cultivation, organic, harvest, livestock, uprooting
<b>Computer</b>	key-board, hacker, desktop, mother-board, internet, recycle bin
<b>Commerce</b>	dividend, industries, investments, trade, contracts
<b>Medicine</b>	clinical, orthopaedic, operations, diagnostics, disease, cure

**D. Words with different functions.**

**Read the following sentence taken from the speech of Dr. Annadurai.**

"It has to take into account the commonness but to trim and train, guide and lead him..."

Notice the use of the words **trim, train, guide** and **lead**. Some words can be used in different contexts, so as to bring out their various meanings.

Do you want a **trim**? (noun)

Do you **trim** your hair regularly? (verb)

Choose the appropriate words to complete the sentences. The first one is done for you.

frame	guide	book	play	print	plan
-------	-------	------	------	-------	------

- We usually **book** tickets for movies in advance.
  - Thirukural is my favourite **book**.
- The **frame** of the photo is broken.
  - We **frame** questions on all topics.
- My teachers **guide** me towards the path of success.
  - The tourist **guide** explained the historical importance of the site.
- We enacted a humorous **play** in our school function.
  - The children **play** in the ground every afternoon.
- My **plan** worked out very well.
  - We should **plan** our work well in advance.
- The **print** is not clear; we cannot read the sentences.
  - We **print** wedding cards here.

**E. A belief, attitude, theory, etc. that is referred to by a word ends with the suffix '-ism'. Here is a sentence from the speech of Dr. Annadurai: 'I admit that the environment is such that even people with robust optimism will be discouraged and forced to take to the path of ease and comfort'.**

Page: 145

The meaning of the word '**optimism**' is '**the hopeful feeling that all is going to turn out well**'. Match the '-ism' words with the appropriate meanings.

S.No.	Meanings	Words	Answer
1.	(e.g.) love of country and willingness to sacrifice for it		<b>patriotism</b>
2.	a brutal barbarous, savage act	nationalism	<b>barbarism</b>
3.	a doctrine that your country's interests are superior	egocentrism	<b>nationalism</b>
4.	participating in sports as a hobby rather than for money	feminism	<b>amateurism</b>
5.	belief that the best possible concepts should be pursued	criticism	<b>idealism</b>
6.	a serious examination and judgement of something	amateurism	<b>criticism</b>
7.	habitual failure to be present at work	barbarism	<b>absenteeism</b>
8.	a doctrine that advocates equal rights for women	idealism	<b>feminism</b>
9.	concern for your own interests and welfare	heroism	<b>egocentrism</b>
10.	exceptional courage when facing danger	absenteeism	<b>heroism</b>

## LISTENING

**Listen to the information about Vishalini and complete her profile with suitable words/phrases.**

Vishalini, hailing from Tirunelveli in Tamilnadu is 11 years old. She is endowed with an outstanding computer and analytical skills. Her IQ is 225, higher than the previous score of 210. She has been the Keynote speaker in International conferences. At the Google India Summit, she was honoured as the youngest Google speaker. She is the recipient of 5 international awards. This child prodigy is considered a wonder girl.

**SPEAKING**

**Prepare a formal five minute speech on topic, 'The importance of Education' and deliver it at your School Assembly.**

Respected chief guest of this day, our beloved principal, my dear teachers and my dear friends! Good morning to you all! I am Suresh from XI standard. It's my privilege to stand in front of you to give a talk on the importance of education.

Education is a must for both men and women equally as both together make a healthy and educated society. It is an essential tool for getting bright future. It plays a most important role in the development and progress of the country. Citizens of the country become responsible for the better future and development of the country. Highly educated people become the base of the developed country. So, proper education makes the bright future of both, the individual and the country. It is only educated leaders who build the nation and lead it to the height of success and progress. Education makes people as perfect and noble as possible.

Good education gives many positives to life such as enhancement of the personal advancement, higher social status, sound social health, economical progress, pride to the nation and so on. It motivates us to set goals in life and makes us aware of many social issues. It makes us find solutions to solve problems-personal and public. Now-a-days, education has become very simple and easy because of the implementation of distance learning programmes. Modern education system is fully capable of removing the social problems of illiteracy and inequality among people of different race, religion and caste.

Education moulds, shapes and chisels the people's minds for the common cause and helps in removing all the differences in the society. It enables us to become a good learner and understand every aspect of life. It provides ability to understand all the human rights and carry out social duties and responsibilities towards country.

It's my pleasure to thank you all for patient listening.

**READING****A. Answer the following questions.****1. Who according to Gandhi can fight against evil and how?**

Only heroes can fight against evils. Gandhi wanted to fight against evil with the help of the good.

**2. What is Gandhi's ideal?**

Gandhi's ideal is both against the cowardliness of hidden revenge and the cowed submissiveness of the terror-stricken.

**3. According to Tagore, when will India get the opportunity to win the gift of freedom?**

India will get the opportunity to win the gift of freedom when she can prove that she is morally superior to the people who rule her by their right of conquest.

**4. How does Tagore acknowledge Gandhi's noble work?**

Tagore acknowledges Gandhi's noble work by offering a poem on 'Supreme Courage of Love.'

**5. Find words from the passage which means the same as the following.**

- |                                    |   |                     |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| a) a malevolent desire for revenge | – | <b>vengefulness</b> |
| b) tactful                         | – | <b>diplomatic</b>   |
| c) despise                         | – | <b>disdain</b>      |

**6. Find words from the passage which are antonyms of the following**

- a) artificially × **naturally**  
 b) strength × **weakness**

**GRAMMAR****A. Report the following dialogue.**

Page: 150

- Prabhu** : What are you doing here, Kiran? I haven't seen you for a few months.  
**Kiran** : I have just come back from my native town Virudhunagar.  
**Prabhu** : Did you enjoy your vacation?  
**Kiran** : Yes. I love the place. It is a clean and busy town.  
**Prabhu** : Where did you go and what did you see?  
**Kiran** : I went to Courtallam falls in Tenkasi.  
**Prabhu** : Share some pictures of your trip.  
**Kiran** : Sure. See you later.

Prabhu asked Kiran what he was doing there. He added that he had not seen him for a few months. Kiran replied that he had just come from his native town, Virudhunagar. Prabhu asked whether he had enjoyed his vacation. Kiran said that he did and continued that he loved the place. It was a clean and busy town. Prabhu asked him where he had gone and what he had seen. Kiran replied that he had gone to Courtallam falls in Tenkasi. Prabhu asked him to share some pictures of his trip. Kiran assured him about it and bade him good bye.

**B. Virat Kohli, the Man of the match and Man of the Series in the one-day International series between India and South Africa February 2018 had this to say during the post match presentation. India won the match by 8 wickets and won the series by 5 – 1, a historic win against South Africa in their home soil.**

Page: 151

**Rewrite Kohli's words in Reported Speech.**

Kohli said that it had been a day he had felt good. Last game, he had not been in the right kind of mindset. That was a beautiful place to bat under light. That was the idea behind bowling first. He liked setting up for the short ball. It had been a blessing in disguise, and they had kept bowling short. He thought the pitch had got better to bat on under lights. It had been a roller coaster till then. People who were close to him deserved a lot of credit. Obviously everyone wanted to lead from the front and that was a wonderful feeling. He had got eight or nine years left in his career and he wanted to make the most of every day. It was a blessing that he was healthy and getting to captain his country. They had shown great character – especially the two young spinners. The way the series had gone augured well for them. They were looking forward to the T20s. The tour was not over yet. After losing the Test series he had been talking to them. He was there talking to them after winning the ODI series.

**C. Read the given passages and rewrite them in direct speech.****1. The cyclist warned the driver not to move his car till the police arrived. The driver pleaded that it was not his fault; he was ready to pay a hundred rupees to repair the damaged cycle. The cyclist refused the money and insisted that the police be called.**

The cyclist said, "Don't move your car till the police arrive." The driver said, "Please! It is not my fault; I am ready to pay a hundred rupees to repair the damaged cycle." The cyclist said, "I will not accept the money. Let us call the police."

2. **The striking workers demanded an increase in salary and asked for the withdrawal of all cases. They threatened to continue the strike if the demands were not met. The manager insisted on them calling off the strike and invited them for a discussion. He agreed to listen to their demands.**

The striking workers said, "There should be an increase in the salary. Withdraw all the cases. We will continue the strike if the demands are not met." The manager said, "Call off the strike and come for a discussion. I agree to listen to your demands."

## WRITING

### E – mail

Page: 152

- a) **Write an email to your uncle thanking him for the gift he had sent from abroad.**

To	: rajasent@gmail.com
cc	: kumar@yahoo.com
Subject	: Thanks for the gift
<p>Dear Uncle,          I received the gift you had sent for my birthday. It is a wonderful expensive watch. All friends like it. Thank you for the gift and I am very happy to know that you remember my birthday. Though you are away from us you are always in our minds.          Kumar</p>	

- b) **Write an email to a charitable trust for a scholarship.**

To	: kumarntent@angelatrust.com
cc	: vanitha@yahoo.com
Subject	: Requisition for a scholarship
<p>Dear Sir,          I am Vanitha from Madurai, Tamil Nadu. I have completed my Std. X from a government school. I have got 489 marks in the board exam. As I am from a poor family I do not have enough money to continue my studies. My father receives only daily wages and the money he gets is just enough to feed all of us. I heard that your trust gives scholarship to the deserving students to pursue higher education. Will you please consider my case and grant me a scholarship to continue my studies.          Vanitha</p>	

## Formal Letters

### Tasks

Page: 154

1. **Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper about the need to wear seat belt while driving.**

From

G. Davidson,  
 257, 2nd Cross Street, Babur Colony,  
 Salem – 636 004.  
 August 28, 2018.

To

The Editor,  
 The Daily,  
 Salem – 636 001.

Sir,

Sub : Need to wear seat belt while driving - reg.

I would like to bring to attention the importance of seat belt while driving. Many drivers do not take this provision seriously though the car company has introduced many signals to use it. People have not understood the importance of the seat belt. The seat belt can save the life of the driver if the car meets with an accident. Now-a-days the hi-end cars come with many balloons to save the life of people inside the car. The balloons will open only when the seat belt is worn. So it is high time that the people took it seriously and wore the belt as we don't live twice.

Please publish this letter in your letter to the editor column so that it will create awareness among the public.

Thank you,

Yours faithfully,  
Davidson.

**2. Write a letter to the commissioner of the corporation complaining about the sanitary condition of the streets in your locality.**

From

K. Kupusamy,  
27, M G R Street,  
Madurai – 10.  
November 10, 2018

To

The Commissioner,  
Madurai Corporation,  
Madurai – 1.

Respected Sir,

Subject: Insanitary condition of the streets - reg.

I am living in ward no 31. We have many big and small streets in the residential areas. Some of the streets still do not have drainage system. Even if they have, the system does not work properly. Most of the time the drainage is full and the dirty water flows on to the streets. People have to walk on this dirty water. The corporation workers come once in a while but they do not clean it well. They say it is blocked in many places and they do not have proper facility to clean them. Moreover the dust bins are not cleared everyday. So people throw the garbage around the dust bin. Accumulated garbage breeds mosquitoes. They may cause dreaded diseases like swine flu, dengue etc. So please take some action to clean our street so that health hazards will be nipped in the bud.

Thank you,

Yours truly,  
Kupusamy.

**3. Write a letter to a sports company ordering sports items for the Physical Education Department of your school.**

From

L. Murugan,  
Sports Secretary,

St. Anne's Higher Secondary School,  
Nagercoil – 929 003.  
December 8, 2018

To

The Manager,  
Indu Sports Store,  
Thirunelveli – 1.

Dear Sir,

Sub : Request for sending sports items - reg.

I would like to place the following order for our school Physical Education Department. Kindly send the items by the end of this month. Please ensure that the items are in good condition and are neatly packed.

S.No.	Names of items	No. of items
1.	Cricket bats – medium size	22
2.	Cricket balls – cork	12
3.	Cricket balls – rubber	15
4.	Shuttle cock rackets	8
5.	Ball badminton rackets	10
6.	Shuttle cocks	2 cylinders
7.	Ball badminton balls	10
8.	Foot balls	5
9.	Basket balls	5

Kindly send particulars of your bank account for immediate online payment.

Thank you,

Yours faithfully,  
Murugan.

**4. Write a letter to the Chief Reservation Supervisor of Railways requesting him to grant concession for your educational tour.**

From

R. Ashwin,  
Headmaster,  
GHSS, Tenkasi.  
7th July, 2018.

To

The Chief Reservation Supervisor,  
The Southern Railways,  
Chennai - 600 001.

Dear Sir,

Sub : Request for concession for education tour - reg.

A team of fifty students of std XI and five teachers of our school are planning to go on an educational tour to New Delhi in the first week of August 2018. They will return after a three-day visit.

I request you to grant concession for fifty members who wish to travel second class from Tirunelveli to New Delhi. I have enclosed a list of students and teachers with a bonafide certificate duly signed by me for your favour.

Thank you,

Yours truly,

R. Ashwin.

(Headmaster)

**5. Write a letter to the curator of the museum seeking permission for a school visit.**

From

T. Santhosh,  
School Pupil Leader,  
George Higher Secondary School,  
Dindivanam.  
September 20, 2018.

To

The Curator,  
K S Museum,  
Chennai – 5.

Dear Sir,

Sub : Request for permission for school visit - reg.

I am the School Pupil Leader of our school. We have proposed to visit your museum on October 18, 2018. Forty students and four teachers will take part in the visit. I will be thankful to you if you give permission to us. This visit will give us first hand experience. Please send the permission letter to the above mentioned address.

Thank you,

Yours faithfully,

Santhosh.

**Tasks**

Page: 155

**a) Respond to the following advertisements.**

<b>Classified Advertisement</b>
<b>WANTED 100 part-time Graphic Artists</b>
Experienced in Photoshop and InDesign- Salary negotiable.
Apply to: MM Graphics, Triplicane, Chennai - 5 or Mail your Resume to <a href="mailto:mmg@xmail.com">mmg@xmail.com</a>

**Part-time Graphic Artist**

From

P. Saravanan,  
87, Gandhi Road,  
Annamalai Colony,  
Thirupur.  
November 8, 2018.

Date : 03.06.2019

To

MM Graphics,  
Triplicane,  
Chennai – 5.

Dear Sir,

Sub : Application for the post of part-time Graphic Artist - reg.

Ref : Your ad in the Hindu dated 1<sup>st</sup> June 2019.

I have come to understand that you are in need of 100 part-time Graphic Artists for your company. I have taken certification in Photoshop and InDesign. I would like to apply for the post. I have five years experience in this field and even now I am doing the same job. If I am given the job I assure you that I will prove myself as a good employee. I have attached copies of all my certificates. Please consider my application for the post.

Thanking you in advance.

Yours sincerely,  
Saravanan.

#### Block Advertisement



#### Female IELTS Teachers Required

Postgraduates in English with a minimum of 3 years experience.

Must be bold and confident

Good salary, transport and food allowance provided.

Apply to: Arv Institute of Languages, 149B, Bose Road, Coimbatore.

Ph: 98400 xxxxx

Email: arvbe@ymail.com

#### Female IELTS Teachers

From

Gita Doss,  
122, Kavin Road, Hasthampatty,  
Salem – 7.  
November 28, 2018.

Date : 03.06.2019

To

ARV Institute of Languages,  
149B, Bose Road,  
Coimbatore.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I saw your advertisement in the newspaper asking for female IELTS teachers and I would like to be considered as a candidate for the post. I have taken 8 bands in IELTS exam and at present I am handling classes for IELTS, TOEFL, and GMAT. I am a postgraduate in English I finished M.A. English in 2010 and I have M.Phil. also. I have more than 3 years' experience in coaching IELTS students. I have attached copies of all my certificates.

I assure you that if I am appointed, I will do my best.

Thanking you in advance.

Yours sincerely,

Gita.

UNIT

5

POEM

# EVEREST IS NOT THE ONLY PEAK

Kulothungan

About the Author

**Author** : V.C. Kulandaiswamy  
**Born** : 14th July, 1929 - Karur District.  
**Education** : • M.Tech, IIT, Kharagpur. • Ph.D  
**Famous Works** : • Six Volumes of Poems • Seven Volumes of Prose Vaazhum Valluvam  
**Themes** : Human Progress, All Pervasive Human Effort  
**Awards** : • Sahitya Akademi Award (1988) • Thiruvalluvar Award (1999)  
**Died** : 10th December, 2016.



Warm Up

Identify the following personalities and their fields of achievement.



<b>Name:</b>	Kailash Satyarthi	Mithali Dorai Raj	Nammalvar	V. Shanta
<b>Field:</b>	Social Activity	Cricket	Traditional Agriculture	Cancer Treatment



<b>Name:</b>	Pitchai Sundararajan	Bachendri Pal	Amartya Sen	Kalpana Chawla
<b>Field:</b>	IT Field	Mountaineering Field	Economics	Aero Space Engineering

❖ **Mention a remarkable achievement of any of these personalities.**

V. Shanta is a prominent cancer specialist and the chairperson of Adyar Cancer Institute, Chennai. Her career has included organizing care for cancer patients and research in the prevention and cure of the disease. Her work won several awards, including the Magasaysay Award, Padma Shri, Padma Bhushan, and Padma Vibhushan, the second highest civilian award by Government of India.

❖ **What quality do you admire the most in each of these achievers?**

I admire their perseverance, dedication and commitment for the cause they have championed.

❖ **What are the qualities that you may share with them?**

I share the following qualities with them:

- Unflinching commitment
- Selflessness
- Service-mindedness
- Firm determination

❖ **Name a few more popular personalities who have made our nation proud.**

- Sachin Tendulkar
- Dr. Myilsamy Annadurai
- M.S. Subbulakshmi
- Dr. Abdul Kalam
- Anil Ambani
- Chetan Bhagat

**SUMMARY**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan, was an eminent technologist and man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted.

We may not have many good qualities to be known to the world. But we can be proud and we can feel that we are also distinguished persons in the society. Whatever we do should be done with devotion and commitment. We should have this quality as our nature. We always hate defeat; everyone wants to win in this world. We should have courage to face any situation. We should never bow down before others for any unnecessary favours. Just to gain something we should not show respect to anybody. We should praise those who do praiseworthy activities in the society. We may hold a humble position in this world but we should be proud of our position. The way we live in this world is important; we should lead a life of dignity and honour without kneeling or bending before others to get any benefit.

Climbing Everest is not the only achievement; even climbing a small hillock is also an achievement. Every small action has a success behind it. It does not matter what height we reach in the society; one who does not bend before others to gain favours will be respected as a king. We should respect the competent and meritorious people and those who could stand on their own to complete their mission. Such people act as a ladder for the uplift of the mankind. Honour is a common property for all. If we live with dignity and pride we need not worry about what status we have in society.

**GLOSSARY**

virtues	good qualities
devotion	loyal commitment towards a particular activity
repel	hate or detest
cringing	behaving in an excessively humble or servile way
adore	worship someone
nourish	to help the growth and development of someone
summit	the highest point of a hill or a mountain peak
stoop	yield or submit, to descend from dignity
competence	the ability to do something efficiently
merit	the quality of being particularly good or worthy

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES****A. Based on your understanding of the poem answer the following questions in a sentence or two each.****1. Which line is repeated in this poem? What is the effect created by this repetition?**

The line 'We are proud and feel so tall' is repeated in this poem. The repetition emphasises the point that we are happy and proud with what we have and what we are.

**2. Who are the 'deserving ones'?**

'Deserving ones' are those who are successful in achieving great things in this world.

**3. What quality does the speaker wish to nourish? What is the mission?**

The speaker wishes to nourish the quality which helps the growth and development of someone. The mission is to bless and appreciate such people.

**4. Which path should we follow in life?**

We should follow the path of dignity and honour.

**5. What does 'Everest' in the title stand for?**

'Everest' in the title stands for great achievement.

**6. What does 'hillock' refer to in the line 'Every hillock has a summit to boast'?**

'Hillock' refers to small achievement we accomplish in this world.

**7. Why does the speaker say 'Everest is not the only peak'?**

Climbing Everest is not the only achievement; even climbing a small hillock is also achievement. Here the speaker means that we should be happy with what we achieve in this world – big or small.

**8. What does the ladder symbolize?**

Ladder symbolizes the help we do for others to go up in their life.

**B. Read the given lines and answer the questions that follow.**

**1. *Our nature it is that whatever we try  
We do with devotion deep and true.***

**a. Who does 'we' refer to?**

The term 'We' refers to people.

**b. How should we carry out our duties?**

We should carry out our work with deep devotion.

**2. *Defeat we repel, courage our fort;***

**a. How do we react to defeat?**

We hate defeat.

**b. Which is considered to be our strong hold?**

Courage is considered to be our strong hold.

3. *We are proud of the position we  
Hold; humble as we are*

a. **What is the speaker proud of?**

The speaker is proud of the position he holds in the society.

b. **How is the speaker both humble and proud?**

The speaker is proud of holding his position but at the same time he is humble before others.

c. **Pick out the alliteration in these lines.**

proud – position.

4. *He, who does not stop, is a king we adore  
We bow before competence and merit;*

Page: 159

a. **Who is adored as a king?**

One who does not stop in his movement towards achievement is adored.

b. **What is the figure of speech used in the first line?**

Metaphor.

5. *Honour is our property, common to all;  
In dignity and pride no one need to be poor*

a. **Who are considered rich?**

Those who lead an honourable and dignified life are rich.

b. **What is their asset?**

Honour is their asset.

### ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

1. *We are proud and feel so tall  
Our virtues though be few and small*

a) **How should we live in this world?**

We should be proud of our life and our life should be a life of high thinking.

b) **What does the poet talk about the virtues?**

Our virtues may be few in number and small in quality but we should be proud of ourselves.

2. *A life that knows no kneeling and bending  
We are proud and feel so tall.*

a) **What kind of life should we lead in this world?**

We should not kneel or bend before others to gain something from them.

b) **How should we feel in this world?**

We should feel proud and high in this world.

3. *The ones that are true and stand on their own  
Are really the ladder for the rise of the Man.*

a) **Who are mentioned as ladder here?**

The ones who are true in their life and who could stand on their own to face this world are mentioned here as the ladder here.

**b) What do such people do in our society?**

Such people help others to rise in their life.

**C. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.****1. In what way is every hillock similar to Everest?**

Prof. V C. Kulandaisamy in his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' brings to our understanding that some people may be lucky to achieve great things but others will also achieve something according to their talents. Everest is not the only peak. There are other peaks which may not be as tall as Everest. But climbing them is also an achievement. We should feel proud and great for the virtues what we have. Whatever we do should be done with deep devotion. We should have defeat, and courage should be our strong hold. We may be humble but we need not worship anybody else. We can bless and praise the achievers. We should be proud of the position we hold in the society. The pride for one comes from the way he leads his life in this world. Our path is dignified and honourable. We do not bend and kneel before others because we are proud of our life. Everest may be the tallest peak but there are other peaks also. Those who try to reach those peaks without stopping their attempt should also be praised. We bow before the people of competence and merit.

**2. The poem does not focus on the destination but the journey towards it. Discuss.**

Prof. V C. Kuladaisamy in his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' brings to our understanding that some people may be lucky to achieve great things but others will also achieve something according to their talents. Everest is not the only peak. There are other peaks which may not be as tall as Everest. But climbing them is also an achievement. The destination is not as important as the journey towards destination. This poem focusses more on the journey than on the destination. So the poet says that Everest is not the only peak and there are many other peaks before reaching Everest. Those who reach the other peaks are also achievers. Our life should be a life of dignity and honour. This poem does not praise only those who reach the destination; it praises even those who have competence and merit. The people who are true to their life and take their own stand are the ladder for others to rise to greater heights in their life. Honour is for everyone – for those who reach the destination and those who take the journey towards destination.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH****Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.****1. What does Prof. Kulandaisamy try to convey in his poem 'Everest is not the only Peak'?**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothungan was an eminent technologist and man of letters. He in his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. We may not have many good qualities to be known to the world. But we can be proud and we can feel that we are also distinguished persons in society. Whatever we do should be done with devotion and commitment. We should never bow down before others for any unnecessary favours. We should praise those who do praiseworthy activities in the society. We may hold a humble position in this world but we should be proud of our position. The way we live in this world is important; we should lead a life of dignity and honour. Climbing Everest is not the only achievement; even climbing a small hillock is also an achievement. Every small action has a success behind it. We should respect the competent and meritorious people and those who could stand on their own to complete their mission

**D. Creative Activity.**

- ♦ **Write eight words you associate with success.**

goal, plan, hard work, smart work, right direction, commitment, achievement, confidants.

- ♦ **Use the words to write eight lines that mean success to you or how success makes you feel.**

We should have a goal which is aligned with our value system.

We should make a plan to achieve our goal.

We should work hard towards the goal.

We should work smart only with the desired activities.

We should follow the right direction towards the goal.

We should have discussion with our like minded people.

Then we will enjoy success.

- ♦ **Arrange your lines into a poem.**

**SUCCESS**

Keeping goal is the first step for success

It should be followed by our plan to reach success

Hard work is our way of life to attain success

Along with hard work, smart work will bring success

Assessment of our work will keep us towards success

Right direction is a positive step to reach success

Discussion with our friends about how far is success

Following all the above steps will lead us to success.

**E. SPEAKING ACTIVITY**

**Discuss the following topics in groups of five and choose a representative to sum up the views and share them with the class.**

- a) To succeed in life, one must have a single-minded devotion to duty.**

Doing our duty is the basis for our success. Our success depends on how we do our duty. To be successful in life we should carry out our duty sincerely. Commitment towards our duty is the first step for our successful life. If we avoid unwanted and undesirable things in our life it would be easy to achieve our goal. So single-minded devotion to duty will surely lead to success.

- b) 'Success is not final, failure is not fatal.' It is the courage and perseverance that counts.**

Success leads to success. So one success is not final. It will lead to another success. So success is never ending. A war can be won after winning many battles. Failure is the stepping stone for success. People learn more from failure than from success. Failure is a learning ground and it teaches what should not be done. So failure is not final.

- c) Successful people neither brood over the past nor worry about the future.**

Yesterday is dead; tomorrow is yet to be born; only today is a boon presented to us. So nothing will happen if you cry over the split milk. So the successful people will never think of what happened in the past. If today is taken care of it becomes the past and we need not worry about the past. In the same

way tomorrow depends on today's work. So if we do things well today everything will fall in its own way. So successful people will not unnecessarily brood over the past and they will not worry about the future because bygones are bygones.

### ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

**Explain the following lines with reference to the context.**

- To seek a gain we adore none;  
We are proud and feel so tall.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' written by Prof. Kulaindaisamy.

**Explanation:**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan was an eminent technologist and a man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. We should have courage to face any situation. We should never bow down before others for any unnecessary favours. Just to gain something we should not show respect to anybody.

- We deem it our duty and mission in life  
To bless and praise the deserving ones.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' written by Prof. Kulaindaisamy.

**Explanation:**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan was an eminent technologist and a man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. We should bless and praise those who do praiseworthy activities in the society. We have to take this as our duty and mission in this world. Such people's accomplishments should never be forgotten.

- Never shall we fail in what we commit  
Shall nourish the ones that nourish the world.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' written by Prof. Kulaindaisamy.

**Explanation:**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan was an eminent technologist and a man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. We should never fail to accomplish what we promise in the world. We should appreciate someone who helps the growth and development of others.

- Our pride springs from the way we live  
Ours is the path of dignity and honour.*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' written by Prof. Kulaindaisamy.

**Explanation:**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan was an eminent technologist and a man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. Our pride does not come from our achievements; it comes from the way we lead our life in the society. Our way should be dignified and honourable.

5. *Everest is not the only peak,  
Every hillock has a summit to boast!*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' written by Prof. Kulandaisamy.

**Explanation:**

Prof. V. C. Kulandaisamy, known as Kulothunagan was an eminent technologist and a man of letters. In his poem 'Everest is not the Only Peak' he enumerates why an ordinary man's achievement should also be appreciated and accounted. . Everest may be the tallest peak but there are other peaks also. Those who try to reach those peaks without stopping their attempt should also be praised. Climbing Everest is not the only achievement; even climbing a small hillock is also an achievement. Every small action has a success behind it. It does not matter what height we reach in the society; one who does not bend before others to gain favours will be respected as a king.

\*\*♦♦\*\*

U  
N  
I  
T

## 5

## THE SINGING LESSON

Katherine Mansfield

## SUPPLEMENTARY

## About the Author

<b>Author</b>	: • Katherine Mansfield Murry • Pen Name - Katherine Mansfield
<b>Born</b>	: 14th October, 1888 - Wellington, New Zealand.
<b>Education</b>	: Queen's College, London.
<b>Occupation</b>	: Short Story Writer
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • The Garden Party - Short Story • The Doll's House • Miss Brill • Bliss
<b>Died</b>	: 9th February, 1923.



## Warm Up

Page: 160

## ❖ What are all the factors that influence our moods?

- unfulfillment of our ambition
- Lack of recognition
- disappointment
- being side-lined
- rejection
- betrayal

## ❖ How do you behave under the spells of different moods?

Under the spell of different moods, I remain absolutely calm. I never exhibit any trace of agitation or aggression. I ponder over the reasons that influence my moods and do not react on the spur of the moment. This keeps the situation under my control.

## ❖ Do you think it is important not to be swayed away by every passing mood?

Yes, it is important to not be swayed away by every passing mood. We cannot judge a person or analyse a situation in a minute or two. By studying the circumstances under which we are made to respond madly, we can prevent our reactions. Postponing reaction is the best means of unnecessary flare-ups.

## ❖ Suggest some ways by which we can maintain a calm temperament under all circumstances.

We must remember that all are not honest all the time. A character possesses both strengths and weaknesses. If we remember this we can understand the action or reaction of the people whom we come into contact with. A sense of empathy will make us maintain a calm temperament.

## SUMMARY

'The Singing Lesson', written by Katherine Mansfield, is all about a surprising day of a music teacher's life. Taken from Katherine's 'The Garden Party and Other Stories' collection, it is a short story written in third person from an unknown narrator's perspective.

Miss Meadows, a music teacher, receives a letter from her fiancé which states quite plainly that Basil, her fiancé, isn't ready to marry her and feels that the marriage would fill him with disgust. The word "disgust" is scratched lightly and written above "regret". Naturally she's filled with despair, anger & sadness. And due to her bad mood she sees everyone and everything in a negative light. Her usual calm and happy mood turns gloomy and angry that day and this change doesn't go unnoticed by her students.

During the lesson she is rather harsh with her students. She tells them that today they would be practicing a lament, without any expression at first. Each stanza, each word, each breath seems like a sob or groan and lament to her gloomy mind. Then she tells them that they must feel the despair, the pain and the sorrow in order to perform the piece perfectly. They are rather frightened by the sudden change in her behavior.

She gets a call from the Headmistress, Miss Wyatt. When she meets the Headmistress in her room she hands over a telegram to Miss Meadows. It is from her fiancé. It clearly asks her to forget the previous letter. She is very happy to receive the telegram and comes back to the class in a happy mood. Now she selects a new lesson 'We come here today with flowers o'er laden with baskets of fruit and ribbons to boot, to-oo congratulate' a cheerful song, singing with expressions, more loudly and cheerfully.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 165

baton	a thin stick used by a conductor of a music orchestra
drawl	slow, lazy way of talking
tangles	a confused mass, twisted
grimace	expression of disgust on a person's face
accompaniments	music played to support an instrument, voice or group
contralto	the lowest female voice
forte	a musical tone played loudly
crescendo	a gradual increase in the loudness of a sound
aisle	a passage between rows of seats
fiancé	a man to whom one is engaged to be married
doleful	sorrowful

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

**A. Based on your understanding of the story, answer the following questions in about 30 - 50 words each.**

**1. What was the knife that Miss Meadows carried with her?**

Miss Meadows carried with her sharp despair. The author calls it a knife.

**2. What kind of relationship existed between Miss Meadows and the Science Mistress?**

Miss Meadows was jealous of the Science Mistress. She hated the Science Mistress.

**3. Why was Miss Meadows upset and dejected?**

Miss Meadows was upset and dejected because she had received a letter from her fiancé saying that he was not interested in marriage.

**4. How would Miss Meadows usually treat Mary? How did her behaviour towards the girl change that day?**

Miss Meadows would usually treat Mary affectionately. Miss Meadows totally ignored the flower Mary gave her that day.

**5. Why had Miss Meadows chosen 'A Lament' as the lesson that particular day?**

Miss Meadows had chosen 'A Lament' as the lesson that particular day because she was lamenting inside her heart.

**6. What brought agony to the girls during the music lessons?**

The attitude of Miss Meadows and the way she made the girls repeat the lessons brought agony to the girls.

**7. Bring out the substance of Basil's letter to Miss Meadows.**

Basil thought that the marriage between Basil and Miss Meadows would be a mistake. He thought that he was not for married life. Settling down in married life would be a disgust for him.

**8. Why did Miss Wyatt summon Miss Meadows to her room?**

There was a telegram for Miss Meadows. So Miss Wyatt summoned Miss Meadows to her room to give the telegram.

**9. How did Miss Meadows express her joy, when she returned to the music class?**

Her attitude changed. She selected a different song 'We come here today with Flowers o'er Laden, With Baskets of Fruit and Ribbons to boot. To-oo Congratulate.'

**10. Briefly explain the cause of Miss Meadows' joy at the end.**

In the beginning of the story Miss Meadows got a letter from her fiancé, Basil that he was not willing to marry her. At the end of the story she received a telegram from him asking her not to pay attention to the previous letter. That was the cause of Miss Meadows' joy at the end.

**VOCABULARY**

**Note the following words from the story. They all refer to different ways of walking. Find out their meanings and use each of them in meaningful sentences of your own. Refer a thesaurus and add a few more to the list.**

- a) trod** – put your foot on something while walking  
She trod casually on the green grass.
- b) fluttered** – move slightly like a bird  
The little boy fluttered around the garden.
- c) hurried** – walked fast  
As he was late, he hurried to the railway station.
- d) skipped** – walk with a slight jump  
The girls skipped around the auditorium.

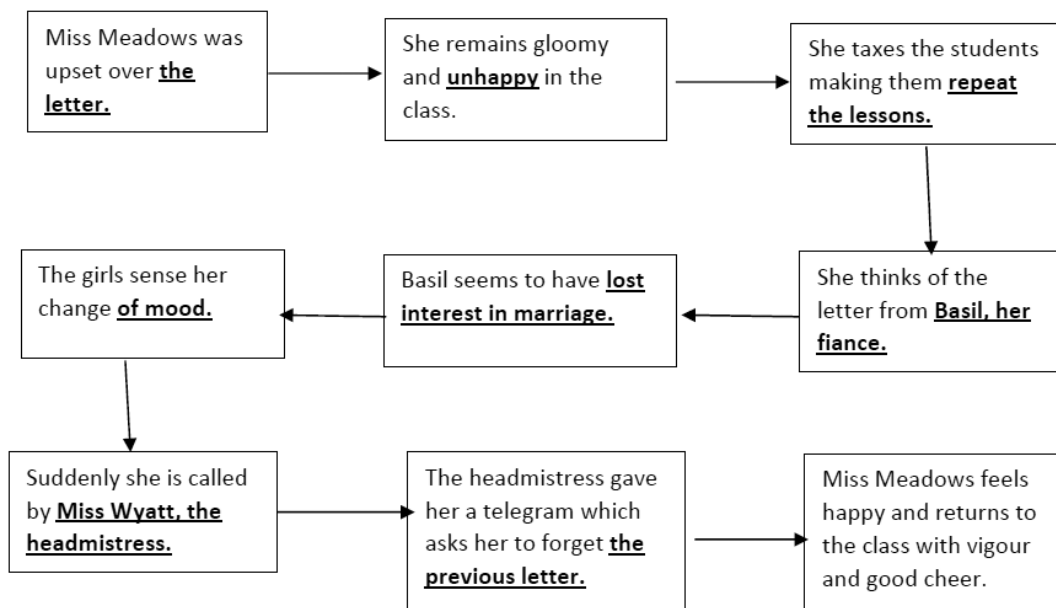
- e) **strode** – long step we make while walking  
He strode towards the library.
- f) **sped** – moved fast  
The car sped along the highway.

**Additional Words:**

- a) **amble** – walk at a relaxed pace  
The children **ambled** along the meadows.
- b) **ramble** – walk for pleasure  
We spent the vacation **rambling** in the village.
- c) **hike** – go for a long walk  
We will go **hiking** this Sunday and enjoy watching the birds.
- d) **stroll** – walk in a slow relaxed way  
The tourists are **strolling** along the garden.
- e) **parade** – walk in a formal group of people  
The winning team will **parade** through the city tomorrow.
- f) **hobble** – walk with difficulty  
The old man **hobbled** across the road.
- g) **saunter** – walk in a slow relaxed way  
The leader **sauntered** by watching the arrangements.
- h) **shuffle** – walk slowly without lifting your feet  
I **shuffled** across the hall to the podium.
- i) **strut** – to walk proudly  
The winning captain **strutted** to the camera.
- j) **prowl** – walk around a room especially because you are bored, anxious etc  
He **prowled** the empty rooms of the house at night.

**B. Complete the mind map given below and write a brief summary of the story in your own words.**

Page: 166



**A brief summary of the story**

Miss Meadows was a music teacher of a school. She was walking towards the music class in despair. It hurt her like a sharp knife. With such a heavy heart she entered the music class. Mary, who was playing the piano as usual gave her a chrysanthemum flower. Normally she would accept it happily. But that day she did not reveal any happiness. The girls, who were ready to start the lesson, sensed that Miss Meadows was not in her usual mood. She selected the lesson 'A Lament' and asked them to sing without expression. As they were singing she thought of the unfortunate letter she had received from her fiancé, Basil. It said that he was not interested in marriage and it would be disgusting if he settled down in married life. The words were getting repeated in her mind. She asked the girls to repeat the lesson again and again. By the time she got a call from the Headmistress, Miss Wyatt. When she went to the Headmistress' room she handed over a telegram to Miss Meadows. It was from her fiancé. It clearly asked her to forget the previous letter. She was very happy to receive the telegram and came back to the class in a happy mood. Now she selected a new lesson 'We come here today with flowers o'er laden with baskets of fruit and ribbons to boot, and 'Congratulate'.

**C. Answer the following in a paragraph of about 150 words each.**

- Describe Miss Meadows mood before and after receiving the telegram. How did it affect the class?**

Miss Meadows, music teacher – in despair – Mary playing the piano – girls sensed unhappiness – selected 'A Lament' – thought of letter – her fiancé Basil – not for marriage – 'A Lament' repeated – got a call – headmistress – telegram from fiancé – to forget previous letter – came back happily

Miss Meadows was a music teacher of a school. She was walking towards the music class in despair. It hurt her like a sharp knife. With such a heavy heart she entered the music class. Mary, who was playing the piano as usual gave her a chrysanthemum flower. Normally she would accept it happily. But that day she did not reveal any happiness. The girls who were ready to start the lesson sensed that Miss Meadows was not in her usual mood. She selected the lesson 'A Lament' and asked them to sing without expression. As they were singing she thought of the unfortunate letter she had received from her fiancé, Basil. It said that he was not interested in marriage and it would be disgust if he settled down in married life. The words were getting repeated in her mind. She asked the girls to repeat the lesson again and again. By the time she got a call from the Headmistress, Miss Wyatt. When she went to the Headmistress' room she handed over a telegram to Miss Meadows. It was from her fiancé. It clearly asked her to forget the previous letter. She was very happy to receive the telegram and came back to the class in a happy mood. Now she selected a new lesson 'We come here today with flowers o'er laden with baskets of fruit and ribbons to boot, and 'Congratulate'.

- 'The only difference between a good day and a bad day is your attitude.' Relate this to a real life experience you have had. Share your thoughts in class.**

A good day for me is when I am alert the whole time. I am able to think and rationalize everything in front of me with ease, speak in the best of manner, write with a flair and complete my work on time, effectively and efficiently.

A bad day is when I

I've been trying to work on something and my own brain has been blocking me.

- I've had to spend a lot of time with people who I find are annoying

- I've been in physical discomfort - tired, sick, sunburnt, blisters, sore muscles

- I've been excessively lonely
- I've been inexplicably cranky

But the above said explanation depends on my attitude. The same thing may be annoying or satisfying depending on my attitude. So the day is with us and we make the day good or bad.

One day I came to the class with my homework ready. But after reaching the class I found my work wrong. The bad day started and it was annoying. The whole night I had been working on it, but now it was a waste. I thought somehow something would work out for me. So I was brushing aside all my negative thoughts. Within half an hour there was an announcement in the public address system that all the students should assemble in the hall for an address by an eminent personality who visited the school that day. So we would show the assignment only the next day. So the day dawned fine for me.

- 3. You are busy getting ready for school. You receive a What's App Message from your best friend, saying that he/she is very upset over the fight you had yesterday and doesn't want to talk to you anymore. This distresses you as he/she sounds very firm. However, today is a big day at school with two tests lined up. What will be your state of mind? How will you handle this situation?**

This situation will surely upset me. Anyway he is my best friend so I will hope that I could convince him that I feel sorry for what happened that day. Moreover there are tests, and all the students will be preparing for the tests including my friend. So I have sometime to talk to him. First I will talk about the test and his preparation and I will give my wishes to him for his performance in the test. He may not respond to me. But I will not get hurt because my only purpose is to talk him and ask his pardon if needed. I will wait for the tests to be over and then I will meet him separately and ask his pardon and try to explain to him the bad mood I had been in when we had the fight. I am sure I will convince him. After all, slow and steady wins the race.

### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS

**Answer the following in a paragraph of about 150 words each.**

- 1. Why was the singing class in sad mood in the beginning?**

"The Singing Lesson" written by Katherine Mansfield, is all about a surprising day of a music teacher's life. Taken from Katherine's 'The Garden Party and Other Stories' collection, it's a short story written in third person from an unknown narrator's perspective. Miss Meadows, a music teacher, receives a letter from her fiancé which states quite plainly that Basil, her fiancé, isn't ready to marry her and feels that the marriage would fill him with disgust. The word "disgust" is scratched lightly and written above "regret". Naturally she's filled with despair, anger & sadness. And due to her bad mood she sees everyone and everything in a negative light. Her usual calm and happy mood turns gloomy and angry that day and this change doesn't go unnoticed by her students. During the lesson she's rather harsh with her students. She tells them that today they would be practising a lament, without any expression at first. Each stanza, each word, each breath seems like a sob or groan and lament to her gloomy mind. Then she tells them that they must feel the despair, the pain and the sorrow in order to perform the piece perfectly. They are rather frightened by the sudden change in her behavior.

**2. Why did a change come in the mood of Miss Meadows and the singing class?**

"The Singing Lesson" written by Katherine Mansfield, is all about a surprising day of a music teacher's life. Taken from Katherine's 'The Garden Party and Other Stories' collection, it's a short story written in third person from an unknown narrator's perspective. Miss Meadows, a music teacher, receives a letter from her fiancé which states quite plainly that Basil, her fiancé, isn't ready to marry her and feels that the marriage would fill him with disgust. The word "disgust" is scratched lightly and written above "regret". Naturally she's filled with despair, anger & sadness. This is reflected in the class. By the time she gets a call from the Headmistress, Miss Wyatt. When she meets the Headmistress in her room she hands over a telegram to Miss Meadows. It is from her fiancé. It clearly asks her to forget the previous letter. She is very happy to receive the telegram and comes back to the class in a happy mood. Now she selects a new lesson 'We come here today with flowers o'er laden with baskets of fruit and ribbons to boot, to-oo congratulate' a cheerful song, singing with expressions, more loudly and cheerfully. Thus the change comes in the mood of the singing class.

\*\*♦♦\*\*

UNIT

5

ICT CORNER

REPORTED SPEECH



1

Mmm, it's so nice to be chilling out at home after all that running around.



2

Oh, Yeah, travelling to glamorous places for a living must be such a drag.



3

Mum, You can be so childish sometimes



4

Hey, I wonder how Daisy's getting on in her job interview



5

Oh, yes. She said she was having it at Four O' clock. So, it'll have finished by now.



6

That'll be her.... yes.



7

Hi, Love, How did it go?



8

Well, good I think, but I don't know really.



9

They said they would phone later and let me know.



10

What kind of thing did they ask you?



11

But I think they meant experience



12

I am sure what you said was impressive



13

They can't expect you to have had much experience at your age.



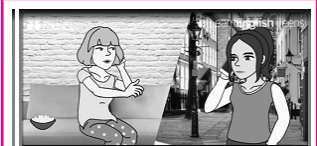
14

And then they asked me what acting I had done. So I told them that I'd had a main part in the school play.



15

and I showed them a bit of the video, so that was cool.



16

Great

			
<b>17</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>20</b>
Oh, and they also asked if I spoke any foreign languages.	Languages?	Yeah, because I might have to talk to tourists, you know.	Oh, right, of course.
			
<b>21</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>23</b>	<b>24</b>
So that was it really	They showed me the costume I'll be wearing if I get the job.	Sending it over..	Hey, sis,
			
<b>25</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>28</b>
I heard that Brad Pitt started out as a giant chicken too!	This could be your big break!	Ha, ha, very funny	Take no notice, darling, I'm sure you'll be a marvellous chicken.



**Bye for now!**

To follow the Grammar Snack adventures visit:  
[www.britishcouncil.org/learnenglishteens](http://www.britishcouncil.org/learnenglishteens)



## UNIT

## 6

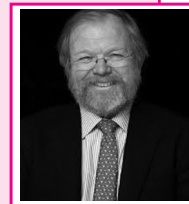
## THE ACCIDENTAL TOURIST

Bill Bryson

PROSE

## About the Author

<b>Author</b>	: William Bill Mc Guire Bryson
<b>Born</b>	: 8th December, 1951 - Iowa, USA.
<b>Education</b>	: Drake University
<b>Occupation</b>	: • Essayist • Non - Fiction Writer
<b>Famous Works</b>	: • A Brief History of Every thing • Notes from a Small Island • Neither Here nor There • Made in America
<b>Honours and Awards</b>	: • Chancellor of Durham University • Aventis Prize • President's Award from the Royal Society of Chemistry
<b>Speciality</b>	: • Travelogue • Science • Humour



## Warm Up

Page: 168

Often on formal occasions, we admire friends and strangers who appear elegant, who are pleasant to converse with and who conduct themselves gracefully. At times, we also see people who are awkward, nervous and doubtful about their next move.

Recall a few examples of awkward actions that can cause discomfort or disturbance to others like spilling a cup of hot drink on someone nearby.

Once I travelled in a tourist bus to Ooty. On the way I felt thirsty, so I took a bottle of water and opened the cork. Without any intention fore thought, I poured water through the window to clean my hand. A scooterist who was driving became my victim. The water poured on his head and instantly, he shouted angrily. Fortunately he balanced his vehicle and avoided accident.

During lunch, I sat on the verandha to have my meal. As I did not like the pickle, I threw it overhead. It fell on the head of a boy taking lunch at my back. He shouted at me furiously.

## SUMMARY

Bill Bryson is an Anglo American author. Bryson had the problem of living in real world. He found it difficult to live with the surroundings which others could do easily. Because of this he had unnecessary complications in dealing with ordinary things. Once he had to travel in a plane. At the airport he realised that he had kept the flyer card in his carry-on bag. He tried to open the zip but it was not opening. When Bryson pulled the zip strongly, it gave way and all the contents fell on the floor. They were only old paper cuttings and some magazines along with some important articles like passport and a tin of tobacco. He was trying to collect all the articles which had been falling down. He tried to collect them but it was not easy for him. His tin of tobacco was rolling and emptying the tobacco powder all over the place. He felt bad about that. By the time he realised that he had hurt his finger. It was bleeding profusely. He could not withstand the sight of blood normally but here it was his own blood. In her reaction his wife said she could not believe that he did that for a living. Once he was in a plane and he bent down to tie his shoelace. At the time one who sat

in front pulled back his seat and he was caught in between the seats. He got relieved by clawing the leg of the man who was sitting next to him.

That was not his worst experience. Once he was travelling in a plane and an attractive lady was sitting by his side. He wrote some important thoughts in the notebook. Then he started sucking one end of the pen thoughtfully and talking to the lady. The pen leaked and the ink was on his mouth, chin, tongue, teeth and gum. Though he tried to be polite and sophisticated mostly he failed. Whenever the food was served in the plane, his wife would ask his children to open the lid for him; otherwise he would spill it all over place. So when he travelled alone normally he kept quite without taking any food.

Because of his constant travel he could easily get many free trips. But he did not get them. This was because either he forgot to ask for it or the airliners would inform him that he was not entitled to receive them. Once he tried to get the free miles and presented the card to the clerk but the clerk told him that the ticket was in the name of B. Bryson and the card was in the name of W. Bryson. Though he tried to explain that Bill was the short form of William so the W was changed to B, the clerk was not convinced.



## GLOSSARY

Page: 170

alley	narrow passage
en famille	as a family
yanked	pulled with a jerk / snatched
consternation	worry
extravagantly	excessively
cascade	waterfall
concourse	open central area
disgorging	discharging
gashed	cut deeply
hysterics	a fit of uncontrollable laughing or crying
exasperation	irritation
catastrophe	a terrible disaster
bons mots	(French) witty remarks
suave	polite and sophisticated
venerable	valued
Bill	William (the letter W is changed to B and William is called Bill)

## MEANINGS

evident	visible	pretty	much
instance	example	alley	a narrow passage-way
en famille	as a family (French)	jammed	blocked
yanked	pulled with a jerk	grunts	groans
frowns	angry expressions	budge	move
abruptly	suddenly	gave way	broke
extravagantly	excessively	dumbstruck	astonished
sorted	arranged	fluttery	agitated

cascade	waterfall	bounced	rebound
oblivions	forgetfulness	crazily	madly
concourse	open area in a public building (here airport)	disgorging	emptying
gashed	wounded	lavish	excessive
hysterics	uncontrollable laughter	panic	fear
exasperation	irritation	catastrophes	terrible disasters
ahead	before	recline	lie back
clawing	scratching	attractive	beautiful
amused	entertained	scattering	spreading
urbane	courteous	ache	pain
suave	sophisticated	extremely	exceptionally
seismic	related to earthquake	frustration	annoyance
accumulated	gathered		

### ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

#### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

- So I pulled on it and **yanked** at it with grunts and frowns and increasing consternation.  
a) pulled with a jerk    b) pulled smoothly    c) pulled easily    d) pulled slowly
- So I pulled on it and **yanked** at it with grunts and frowns and increasing **consternation**.  
a) pressure    b) laughter    c) worry    d) strength
- I watched dumbstruck as a hundred carefully sorted documents came raining down in a fluttery **cascade**.  
a) rain    b) lake    c) river    d) waterfall
- ...lidless tin of tobacco rolled crazily across the concourse **disgorging** its contents.  
a) keeping    b) emptying    c) closing    d) seeing
- I discovered that I had **gashed** my finger on the zip.  
a) gathered    b) kept    c) closed    d) wounded
- My wife looked at me with an expression of wonder – not anger or **exasperation**.  
a) expensive    b) pleasant    c) dejection    d) irritation
- I always have **catastrophes** when I travel.  
a) experience    b) involvement    c) disaster    d) understanding
- I amused her twenty minutes with the scattering of urbane **bons mots**.  
a) witty remarks    b) serious remarks    c) family remarks    d) angry remarks

9. So you will understand, I trust, when I tell you how much I ache to be **suave**.  
 a) polite                      b) sophisticated                      c) witty                      d) important
10. I explained to her the close and **venerable** relationship between Bill and William  
 a) possible                      b) unwanted                      c) famous                      d) respected

Answers									
1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. d	6. d	7. c	8. a	9. b	10. d

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the correct synonym for each of the following from the options given.

1. ...other people do without any **evident** difficulty that are pretty much beyond me.  
 a) unclear                      b) visible                      c) possible                      d) available
2. ...other people do without any evident difficulty that are **pretty** much beyond me.  
 a) beautiful                      b) easy                      c) very                      d) strong
3. The zip on the bag was **jammed**.  
 a) opened                      b) closed                      c) broken                      d) blocked
4. So I pulled on it and yanked at it with **grunts** and frowns and increasing consternation.  
 a) happiness                      b) sadness                      c) groans                      d) difficulty
5. So I pulled on it and yanked at it with grunts and **frowns** and increasing consternation.  
 a) anger                      b) pleasure                      c) ease                      d) delight
6. I kept this up for some minutes but it wouldn't **budge**.  
 a) stop                      b) move                      c) break                      d) close
7. **Abruptly** the zip gave way.  
 a) gradually                      b) slowly                      c) easily                      d) suddenly
8. I watched **dumbstruck** as a hundred carefully sorted documents came raining down in a fluttery cascade.  
 a) happily                      b) coolly                      c) astonished                      d) doubtfully
9. I watched dumbstruck as a hundred carefully **sorted** documents came raining down in a fluttery cascade.  
 a) arranged                      b) torn                      c) thrown                      d) pushed
10. I watched dumbstruck as a hundred carefully sorted documents came raining down in a **fluttery** cascade.  
 a) smooth                      b) clear                      c) huge                      d) agitated
11. ...coins bounced to a variety of noisy **oblivions**.  
 a) remembrance                      b) forgetfulness                      c) breaking                      d) falling

12. ...lidless tin of tobacco rolled **crazily** across the concourse disgorging its contents  
 a) easily                      b) pleasantly                      c) madly                      d) neatly
13. ...lidless tin of tobacco rolled crazily across the **concourse** disgorging its contents  
 a) open space                      b) closed space                      c) restricted place                      d) private place
14. ...and was shedding blood in a **lavish** manner  
 a) slow                      b) excessive                      c) quick                      d) frugal
15. Confused and unable to help my hair went into **panic** mode.  
 a) fear                      b) happy                      c) sad                      d) fast
16. Just at the moment someone in the seat **ahead** of me threw his seat back into full recline.  
 a) after                      b) before                      c) near                      d) far
17. Just at the moment someone in the seat ahead of me threw his seat back into full **recline**.  
 a) lie back                      b) fall down                      c) lie front                      d) lay down
18. It was only by **clawing** the leg of the man sitting next to me that I managed to get myself freed.  
 a) stamping                      b) touching                      c) scratching                      d) falling at
19. I **amused** her twenty minutes with the scattering of urbane bons mots.  
 a) thanked                      b) entertained                      c) requested                      d) invited
20. I amused her twenty minutes with the scattering of **urbane** bons mots.  
 a) impolite                      b) village                      c) city                      d) courteous
21. So you will understand, I trust, when I tell you how much I **ache** to be suave.  
 a) request                      b) demand                      c) pain                      d) want
22. This has become a real **frustration** for me.  
 a) annoyance                      b) intolerable                      c) unbearable                      d) painful
23. Yet I have **accumulated** only about 212 air miles divided between twenty-three airlines.  
 a) spread                      b) accepted                      c) gathered                      d) spent

**OPPOSITES**

evident	×	doubtful	suddenly	×	gradually
remember	×	forget	recently	×	earlier
frequent	×	rare	started	×	ended
carefully	×	carelessly	lavish	×	frugal
extremely	×	moderately	leaving	×	keeping
various	×	same	discover	×	conceal
quietly	×	noisily			

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

### EXERCISE WITH ANSWER

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. I pulled on it with grunts and frowns and increasing consternation.  
 a) worry                      b) dismay                      c) disdain                      d) happiness
2. ...coins bounced to a variety of noisy oblivions.  
 a) forgetfulness              b) remembrance              c) strength                      d) weakness
3. ...lidless tin of tobacco rolled crazily across the concourse disgorging its contents as it went.  
 a) filling                      b) changing                      c) shouting                      d) entering
4. ...not anger or exasperation, but just simple wonder.  
 a) enjoyment                      b) irritation                      c) helplessness                      d) sadness
5. ...as if I have just experienced an extremely localised seismic event.  
 a) inside                      b) global                      c) outside                      d) country
6. I explained to her the close and venerable relationship between Bill and William.  
 a) respected                      b) wasted                      c) meaningful                      d) disrespected

Answers					
1. d	2. b	3. a	4. a	5. b	6. d

### SELF EVALUATION

Choose the most accurate of the four given words which is opposite to the usage of the underlined word in the following sentences.

1. Other people do without any evident difficulty that are pretty much beyond me.  
 a) doubtful                      b) clear                      c) proof                      d) serious
2. I am not very good at living in the real world is perhaps the most outstanding.  
 a) great                      b) extraordinary                      c) common                      d) known
3. My particular specialty now is returning to hotel desks two or three times a day.  
 a) permanent                      b) general                      c) temporary                      d) great
4. I am in short easily confused.  
 a) before                      b) after                      c) simply                      d) difficult
5. I suddenly remembered that I had recently joined British Airways' frequent flyer programme.  
 a) gradually                      b) immediately                      c) soon                      d) greatly

6. I suddenly remembered that I had **recently** joined British Airways' frequent flyer programme.  
a) after                      b) ago                      c) just                      d) happily
7. I suddenly remembered that I had recently joined British Airways' **frequent** flyer programme.  
a) often                      b) always                      c) seldom                      d) infamous
8. I had gashed my finger on the zip and was shedding blood in a **lavish** manner.  
a) plenty                      b) extravagant                      c) wasteful                      d) frugal
9. ...not anger or **exasperation**, but just simple wonder.  
a) enjoyment                      b) irritation                      c) helplessness                      d) sadness
10. ...at the moment someone in the seat ahead of me threw his seat back into full **recline**.  
a) push                      b) straight                      c) pull                      d) rotation
11. I **amused** her for perhaps 20 minutes with a scattering of urbane bons mots.  
a) entertained                      b) took care of                      c) pleased                      d) annoyed
12. ...as if I have just experienced an **extremely** localised seismic event.  
a) greatly                      b) surely                      c) moderately                      d) doubtfully
13. ...get in a car and close the door without **leaving** 14 inches of coat outside.  
a) keeping                      b) serving                      c) tearing                      d) showing

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 171

**A. Based on your understanding of the lesson answer the following questions in one or two sentences each.**

**1. Give a few instances of Bryson's confused acts.**

Mistakenly he placed the flyer programme inside his carry-on bag. He was confused to take that out. In a plane he tried to tie his shoelace and found himself pinned in the crash position. He kept the pen into his mouth and had the ink all over his face.

**2. What were the contents of the bag?**

The contents of the bag were newspaper cuttings, loose papers, a 14 ounce tin of pipe tobacco, magazines, passport, English money and film.

**3. Describe the fluttery cascade of things tumbling from the bag.**

He was wonderstruck to see the well-arranged documents flying out of the bag. The coins bounced noisily and the tobacco tin rolled across the airport spreading the contents all over the place.

**4. Why did the author's concern over tobacco shift to his finger?**

The author was feeling sorry for spilling all the contents of the bag. Then he realised that he had a wound in his finger and it was bleeding profusely. So his concern shifted to his finger.

**5. What happened to Bryson when he leaned to tie his shoelace?**

When he leaned to tie his shoelace, unfortunately the one who occupied his front seat pulled his seat back and Bryson was caught between the two seats. Then with the help of his neighbour he got released.

**6. How did Bryson free himself from the crash position?**

By clawing the leg of the man sitting next to him, Bryson freed himself.

**7. What was Bryson's worst accident on a plane?**

Bryson's worst accident on a plane was when he sucked the back of his pen. Then he realised that his pen had leaked and he got the ink on his mouth, chin, tongue, teeth and gums.

**8. What did Bryson wish to avoid in his life?**

Bryson wished to avoid getting frequent flyer miles.

**9. How would staying away from liquid mischief benefit Bryson?**

If Bryson stayed away from liquid mischief, he need not spend much on his laundry bills.

**10. Why did the clerk say that Bryson was not entitled to flyer miles?**

The ticket was in the name of B. Bryson but the card was in the name of W. Bryson. So, the clerk said that Bryson was not entitled to flyer miles.

**ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS**

**Answer the following questions in one or two sentences each.**

**1. What is the specialty of Bryson in 'Accidental Tourist'?**

Bryson had the problem of living in real world. He found it difficult to live with the surroundings which others could do easily. Because of this he had unnecessary confusion in dealing with ordinary things.

**2. Why did Bryson try to open the carry-on bag?**

Bryson had recently joined British Airway's frequent flyer programme. He had kept the card inside the carry-on bag. He had to take that card from the bag. So he tried to open the carry-on bag.

**3. Why did the zip of carry-on bag give way?**

The zip of the bag was jammed. He tried to pull and yank the zip but he failed. So he used all his force to open the zip but the zip broke and gave way.

**4. How did Bryson get ink in his mouth and some parts of his face?**

Bryson was jotting notes on his way in a plane. In a thoughtful mood he was sucking the back of the pen. The pen leaked and he got the ink on his mouth, chin, tongue, teeth and gums.

**B. Answer the following questions in about three to four sentences each.**

**1. Why doesn't Bryson seem to be able to do easily what others seem to? Give a few reasons.**

Bryson had the problem of living in real world. He found it difficult to live with the surroundings which others could do easily. Because of this he had unnecessary confusion in dealing with ordinary things.

**2. What was the reaction of Bryson's wife to his antics?**

When Bryson pulled the zip of his bag to open, it gave way and all the contents fell on the floor, They were only old paper cuttings and some magazines along with some important articles like passport.

He was trying to collect all the articles which had been falling down. In her reaction, his wife said she could not believe that he did that for a living.

**3. Briefly describe the 'accidents' encountered on the flight by Bryson.**

Once he was in a plane and he bent down to tie his shoelace. By the time one who sat in front pulled back his seat and he was caught in between the seats. He got relieved with the help of a man who was sitting next to him. Once he sucked the back of his pen. Then he realised that the pen leaked and he got the ink on his mouth, chin, tongue, teeth and gums.

**C. Based on your understanding of the text, answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 – 150.**

**1. 'To this day, I don't know how I did it.' What does it refer to?**

'It' refers to the knocking of the soft drinks on the lap of a lady in a flight. Once Bill Bryson was flying in an aeroplane. Accidentally, he knocked his soft drinks, and the lady who was sitting next to him became the victim of his inadvertency. The flight attendant came to the rescue of the lady. He cleaned the mess and brought another drink to the author. This time also, he knocked his drink which spoiled the lap of the 'poor' lady. Seething with fury, she swore at him for his act of negligence. She uttered an oath which started with 'oh' and ended with 'sake'. The author had never come across such unpleasant, uncouth words. He felt embarrassed on the spot. To this day, Bryson says that he does not know how it happened. [Original text referred]

**2. '....But, when it's my own – well, I think hysterics are fully justified'- How?**

In the lesson 'The Accidental Tourist' Bryson describes how he suffers because of his unnecessary tension and stress during his travel in flight. Once he mistakenly kept his request flier programme inside his carry-on bag. He had to open the bag to find out that. He could not open it easily because the zip got jammed. He pulled it with all his strength and the zip gave way. All the contents fell on the floor of the airport. The contents were newspaper cuttings, loose papers, a tin of pipe tobacco, magazines, passport, English money and film. He tried to collect them but it was not easy for him. His tin of tobacco was rolling and emptying the tobacco powder all the place. He felt bad about that. By the time he realised that he had hurt his finger. It was bleeding profusely. He could not withstand the sight of blood normally but here it was his own blood. So his hysteric crying was fully justified.

**3. Bring out the pun in the title 'The Accidental Tourist' (one who happens to travel by accident or one who meets with accidents often on his or her trips!)**

Pun means an amusing use of a word or phrase that has two meanings. Usually one meaning will be for fun and another will be serious. A pun is a play on words that produces a humorous effect by using a word that suggests two or more meanings, or by exploiting similar sounding words that have different meanings. Humorous effects created by puns depend upon the ambiguities the words entail. These ambiguities arise mostly in homophones and homonyms. For instance, in the sentence, "A happy life depends on a liver," the word liver can refer to the bodily organ, or simply a person who lives (though we may not use it in our regular meaning). Similarly, in the saying "Atheism is a non-prophet institution," the word "prophet" is used instead of "profit" to produce a humorous effect. In the same way the title 'The Accidental Tourist' gives two meanings – one, the person who happens to travel by accident ie. not a regular traveller; another one, the person who meets with accidents often on his trips. In the lesson written by Bryson, he was a regular traveller but he met with accidents – not physical accidents but mental accidents because of his confusion for small things. As he says he was not comfortable with the real world.

**4. Can a clumsy person train himself/herself to overcome shortcomings? How could this be done?**

Our repeated actions become our habits. Even the clumsy people have become so because of their repeated clumsy actions. If any action is stopped for some times with certain effort from the individual, that habit can be stopped. So the clumsy person can train himself to overcome the shortcomings. But it truly depends on the individual. Others can give some motivation or guidance. First of all they should realise that what they do is wrong. Unless they correct themselves they would not be accepted in society as normal people. They should try to live in the real world.

**5. As a fellow passenger of Bill Bryson on the flight, make a diary entry describing his clumsy behaviour during the trip and the inconveniences caused to others as a result of his nervousness.**

7<sup>th</sup> June

3.30 p.m

Bill Bryson was a confused man. Because of his nervousness he spoils his life and the life of others who are around him. I was his co-passenger. He broke open the zip of his carry-on bag. All the contents fell on the floor of the airport. Papers were flying here and there giving all kinds of trouble to the other waiting passengers. His pipe tobacco tin opened and the tobacco powder was flying everywhere. He hurt his finger in the process of opening the zip. Then he shouted out of pain after seeing his blood. This day I was sitting next to him in the plane. He bent forward to tie his shoelace. The one who was sitting in front of him pulled his seat back and Bryson was caught in between the seats. I finally helped him out of the trouble. This day also he was travelling with me. He had his pen in his mouth and got the ink over mouth, tongue, teeth and gum. He walked here and there awkwardly.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPHS**

**Answer the following questions in a paragraph of about 100 – 150.**

**1. Describe the problem faced by Bryson due to his carry-on bag at the airport.**

Once he had to travel in a plane. At the airport he realised that he had kept the flyer card in his carry-on bag. He tried to open the zip but it was not opening. When Bryson pulled the zip strongly, it gave way and all the contents fell on the floor. They were only old paper cuttings and some magazines along with some important articles like passport and a tin of tobacco. He was trying to collect all the articles which had been falling down. He tried to collect them but it was not easy for him. His tin of tobacco was rolling and emptying the tobacco powder all over the place. He felt bad about that. By the time, he realised that he had hurt his finger. It was bleeding profusely.

**2. What was the worst experience of Bryson?**

Once he was travelling in a plane and an attractive lady was sitting by his side. He wrote some important thoughts in notebook. Then he started sucking one end of the pen thoughtfully and talking to the lady. The pen leaked and the ink was on his mouth, chin, tongue, teeth and gum. Though he tried to be polite and sophisticated, mostly he failed. This was his worst experience. Whenever the food was served in the plane, his wife would ask his children to open the lid for him; otherwise he would spill it all over place. So when he travelled alone normally he kept quite without taking any food.

## VOCABULARY

Page: 172

## A. Foreign words and phrases.

You have come across the French phrases 'en famille' |ən <famille>| and 'bons mots' | bɑn 'ma:ts | in the lesson. Now look at the following phrases and their meanings.

- a) viva voce - /,vaɪvə vəʊsi/ - a spoken examination
- b) sine die - /'sɪnə 'di:/: - without a date being fixed
- c) resume - /'rezju:meɪ/ - a brief summary
- d) rapport - /ræ'pɔ:(r)/ - close relationship with good understanding
- e) bonafide - /,bəʊnə 'fɑ:di/ - genuine

## B. Refer to the dictionary and find out the meanings of the following words/phrase. Use them in sentences of your own.

1. **bon voyage** - wish someone a good and safe journey  
Anita wished her friend **bon voyage** to US.
2. **in toto** - totally, as a whole  
The management accepted our plan **in toto**.
3. **liaison** - regular exchange of information between two groups  
There should be **liaison** between army and police.
4. **ex gratia** - something paid as a gift not as a legal payment  
An **ex gratia** amount of Rs. 15000 was paid to the family of flood victims.
5. **en masse** - something done together  
The management team resigned **en masse**.
6. **en route** - on the way  
We will stop **en route** for lunch.
7. **ad hoc** - not planned, but arranged when necessary  
Decisions may be taken on an **ad hoc** basis.
8. **faux pas** - an embarrassing mistake in a social situation  
The present government is responsible for the **faux pas**.
9. **par excellence** - The very best of a particular thing.  
Virat Kohli is a batsman **par excellence**.
10. **in camera** - a law case conducted secretly or privately  
The trial was conducted **in camera**.
11. **status quo** - maintaining the present / current situation without any change.  
The Reserve Bank Governor wants to maintain the **status quo** in interest rates.
12. **magnum opus** - the most important piece of work by a writer or an artist.  
The film 'Sarkar' is Murugadas' **magnum opus**.
13. **bon voyage** - wishing someone a good journey  
I wished my uncle **bon voyage** as he was leaving for China.
14. **in cognito** - in disguise  
Actresses go shopping **in cognito**.

15. **deja vu** – a feeling that we have already experienced / come across  
I had a sense of **deja vu** when I saw the film.
16. **a-la-carte** – choosing from a list of dishes  
We chose **a-la-carte** from the menu card.
17. **via media** – making compromise  
The news editors work **via media** for reporting events.
18. **per capita** – calculate something according to the number of people in a particular place or country  
**Per capita** income increases every year.
19. **tete-te** – an intimate and private conversation between two  
We had a pleasant **tete-a-tete** over dinner.
20. **carte blanche** – permission or freedom to do whatever one wants.  
You have the **carte blanche** to choose your workplace.

**Here is a list of some words borrowed from Indian languages and have been included in the Dictionary of English. Add more words to the table.**

WORD	ORIGIN	MEANING
veranda	Hindi	a roofed platform along the outside of a house
bungalow	Hindi	a house in the Bengal style
chutney	Hindi	a ground or mashed relish
cheetah	Sanskrit	uniquely marked
coir	Malayalam	rope
bamboo	Kannada	wood
bandicoot	Telugu	kind of rat
catamaran	Tamil	multi-hulled watercraft
guru	Sanskrit	master
anna	Tamil	elder brother
masala	Urdu	mixture of ground spices
dabba	Punjabi	a roadside food stall or restaurant

### ADDITIONAL

mantra	Hindi	spell
avatar	Sanskrit	god appearing in physical form
dharma	Sanskrit	righteousness
bangle	Hindi	a type of bracelet
cot	Hindi	bed
pandal	Tamil	temporary shelter
pitta	Telugu	young bird
dhole	Kannada	wolf

bhakti	Hindi	devotion
brinjal	Persian	vegetable
dhal	Hindi	a type of Indian cereal

## C. Idioms.

Page: 173

Look at the list of idioms given below. Find their meanings from a dictionary. Read the sentences that follow and replace the word in italics with the appropriate idioms making suitable changes wherever necessary.

- right up one's alley – one's like
- drive one up the hill – feel irritated
- hit the road – start a journey
- take (one) for a ride – take someone/something for granted
- in panic mode – afraid of

## a) The old man got irritated at the loud noise outside.

The loud noise got the old man **drive up the wall**.

## b) We were driving, when it started raining heavily. After stopping for an hour, we began the journey again.

We were driving, when it started raining heavily. After stopping for an hour, we **hit the road** again.

## c) Ramesh gave false excuses for not attending the meeting and deceived me.

Ramesh gave the false excuses for not attending the meeting. He **took us for a ride**.

## d) At the interview when questions were fired at me rapidly, I forgot everything and grew irritated.

At the interview when questions were fired at me rapidly, I forgot everything and I was **in panic mode**.

## e) I love thrillers and this book appeals to me strongly.

I love thrillers and I find this book **right up my alley**.

## LISTENING ACTIVITY

Listen to the dialogue read out by the teacher or to the recorded version and answer the questions that follow:

## i) \_\_\_\_\_ was one of the places visited by Mahesh.

- a) Srilanka                      b) Goa                      c) Kasi                      d) Cochin

## ii) The Art Museum at Trivandrum is called \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Swarnalayam              b) Gitalayam              c) Chitralayam              d) Saranalayam

## iii) Varkala is the oldest port of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Quilon                      b) Andhra                      c) Puducherry              d) the Andamans

## iv) Mahesh had been to the \_\_\_\_\_ Lake Wild Life Sanctuary.

- a) Chidambaram              b) Pulicat                      c) Kovalam                      d) Periyar

v) Cochin is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the East.

a) Granary

b) Cuba

c) Venice

d) Pearl

Answers				
1. d	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c

## SPEAKING ACTIVITY

a) Build a dialogue of 8-10 exchanges between your friend and yourself on the following.

You were to board a train to Delhi. By mistake you got into the wrong train and fought for your seat there. On realizing your mistake you left the train shamefaced, after creating a commotion there. Role-play this situation before the class.

Friend : Hi Tom, where were you? I have not seen you for more than two weeks.

I : I was in Bengaluru to attend a seminar.

Friend : When did you return from Bengaluru?

I : Yesterday. But when I went to Delhi I had a bitter experience.

Friend : What happened? Anything serious?

I : It may sound funny now but it was really an unpleasant experience.

Friend : Tell me what has happened?

I : Let me tell you. I reached the railway station on time. I saw the train bound for Bengaluru on the platform.

Friend : Fine. Then what happened.

I : Wait man. I got into the train and to my surprise my seat was occupied by someone else.

Friend : Really, How did you get your seat?

I : I went straight to the man and asked him to get up but he refused. He said he had a valid ticket for the seat.

Friend : How is it possible?

I : I uttered some harsh words against him but he remained cool and composed. He showed his ticket – S8 – 42. Mine was also the same.

Friend : It is interesting

I : But when I checked the train number, I had to keep my head down.

Friend : Why?

I : It was a different train. My train time was 9.30 and that train time was 9.00.

Friend : How did you face this situation?

I : What to do? I said sorry. I bolted out of the compartment.

b) Speak to the class for a minute, as to how one should conduct oneself on formal occasions. (You could talk about table-manners especially while eating, general appearance, manner of speaking, etc.)

When we attend a formal meeting we should behave properly. All the other members will be watching us. The meeting may start with a small party where we have to sit for a meal or snacks. We should be careful about the table-manners. We should not stretch our hands too much to collect

something from the table. When we order something we should not raise our voice. We should not make noise while drinking water. We should not spill food on the table and floor. During the meeting we should not obstruct someone while they talk. Try to listen to others before you begin your talk. Use always polite words even to disagree with someone. Don't use harsh words. Be polite and gentle. Use expressions like 'Thank you', 'Welcome', 'Sorry' according to the situations.

## READING

Page: 175

Answer the following questions.

**1. The Labrador Retriever was covered with tri-colour. What does this signify?**

It signifies the honour of National Hero to the deceased dog.

**2. How did Caesar save several lives at the CST railway station?**

It sniffed out hand grenades left by the terrorists at the CST railway station. Thus it saved several lives.

**3. Which word in the passage (paragraph 3) means the same as 'forced'?**

Pressed to service

**4. "Service of the retired members of Dog Squad during 26/11 will be unforgettable." Mention three services rendered by Caesar.**

- It took part in the bomb detection attack on Mumbai.
- It sniffed out a hand grenades from CST railway station.
- It took part in bomb search operation after the 2006 serial train blasts.

**5. Caesar is a Labrador breed of dogs. Name a few other native breeds that are used by the Police force.**

- |                  |              |          |
|------------------|--------------|----------|
| ● Mudhol         | ● Rampur     | ● Hound  |
| ● Indian Mastiff | ● Rajapalyam | ● Kombai |

**6. Try to rewrite the news item in your mother tongue without losing the spirit and flavour of the text. Give a suitable title to your translated version.**

**Caesar, the Hero of Mumbai on 26/11**

Mumbai Caesar, the last surviving hero of his kind, died after the attack on one Thursday. Caesar, a Labrador retriever, was covered with tri-colour and given an emotional farewell from the city Police Force. The Mumbai Police Commissioner too marked the passing of the hero with a tweet.

மும்பை சீசர், தனது இனத்திலேயே காணப்பட்ட உயிருடன் இருந்த நாய், ஒரு வியாழக்கிழமையன்று உயிர்விட்டது. சீசர் ஒரு லாப்ரடோர் ரெட்வர் வகை நாய். மூவாணக் கொடி அதன் மீது போர்த்தப்பட்டு நகர காவல்துறையினால், உணர்ச்சிகரமான பிரியாவிடை தரப்பட்டது. ட்வீட் (tweet) மூலமாக மும்பை காவல் ஆணையர், ஒரு கதாநாயகன் காலமானதாக குறிப்பிட்டிருந்தார்.

Caesar, who was 11 years old was the sole survivor among the dogs of Mumbai Police who took part in bomb detection operations during the terrorist attack on Mumbai that began on November 26, 2008. He died of heart attack at a farm in Virar where he and his three canine buddies had been sent after retirement. During the terror attack in Mumbai, Caesar saved several lives when he sniffed out the hand grenades left by the terrorists at the busy CST railway station.

2008, நவம்பர் 26ல் மும்பை மீது நடத்திய தீவிரவாதிகளின் தாக்குதலின்போது, வெடிகுண்டுகளை கண்டுபிடிப்பதில் பங்குகொண்ட மும்பை காவல்துறையின் நாய்களில் உயிரோடு இருந்த ஒரே ஒரு நாயான சீசுருக்கு 11 வயதாக இருந்தது. ஓய்விற்கு பின்பு, விகார் என்னும் இடத்திலுள்ள பண்ணைக்கு மூன்று நாய்களுடன் சீசர் அனுப்பி வைக்கப்பட்டது. அந்த இடத்தில் மாரடைப்பால் அது இறந்தது. மும்பையில் தீவிரவாத தாக்குதலின் போது பரபரப்பான CST புகைவண்டி நிலையத்தில் தீவிரவாதிகள் வைத்த எறிகுண்டுகளை மோப்பம் பிடித்து, அநேக மக்களின் உயிர்களை, சீசர் காப்பாற்றியது.

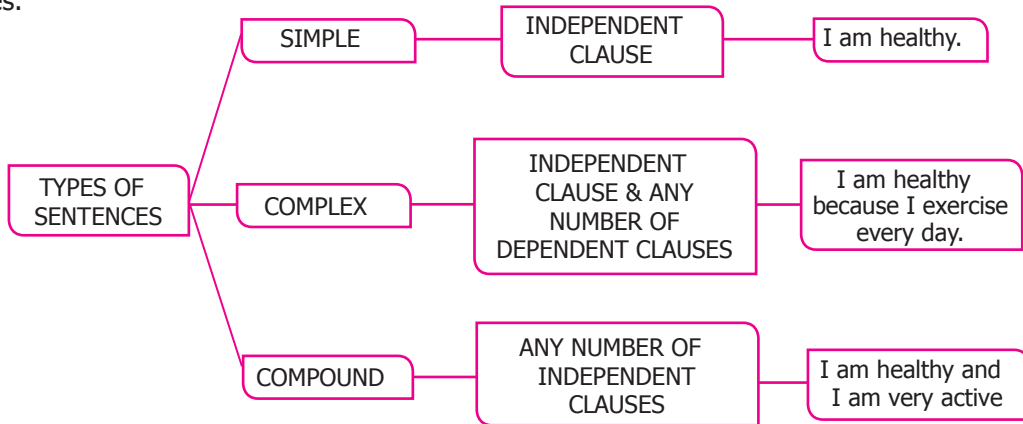
Caesar was also a part of the search team at Nariman house, where terrorists were holed up for three days. Earlier he was also pressed into service for bomb search operation after the 2006 serial train blasts and July 2017 blast in Mumbai. The Mumbai police officials also tweeted their grief saying, "Services of retired members of Dog Squad during 26/11 will be unforgettable. We will remember our heroes forever."

மூன்று நாட்களாக நரிமான் வீட்டில் ஒளிந்திருந்த தீவிரவாதிகளை தேடும் குழுவில் சீசர் பங்குவகித்தது. மூன்று, மும்பையில் ஜூலை 2017 குண்டுவெடிப்பு மற்றும் 2006 புகைவண்டி தொடர் குண்டுவெடிப்பு - இதற்கு பின்பு, வெடிகுண்டு தேடுதல் பணியில் அது ஈடுபடுத்தப்பட்டது. மும்பை காவல்துறை அலுவலர்கள், தங்கள் வருத்தத்தை ட்வீட் இவ்வாறு செய்தனர். "நவம்பர் 26ம் தேதியன்று, ஓய்வெற்ற நாய்கள் குழுவின் சேவைகள் மறக்கமுடியாதவையாகும். எப்போதும் எங்களது கதாநாயகர்களை நினைவில் கொள்வோம்".

## GRAMMAR

### f. Transformation of Sentences

Sentences can be of three types – Simple, Compound, Complex. A simple sentence has one independent clause (A clause is a group of words with a subject and a verb). A Compound sentence joins two or more number of independent clauses. A Complex sentence has one independent clause and one or more dependent clauses.



#### a. Do as directed.

Page: 176

#### 1. Dinesh and Prabhu wanted to meet Varsha at the bus stop. They went to the bus stop.

(combine into a compound sentence)

Dinesh and Prabhu wanted to meet Varsha at the bus stop so they went to the bus stop.

#### 2. Varsha reached the railway station. She was waiting for them there.

(combine into a compound sentence)

Varsha reached the railway station and was waiting for them there.

#### 3. While she waited at the train station, Varsha realized that the train was late.

(change into a simple sentence)

Waiting at the train station Varsha realised about the late coming of the train.

4. **Dinesh and Prabhu left the bus stop. Varsha rang them.** (combine into a complex sentence)  
When Dinesh and Prabhu left the bus stop, Varsha rang them.
5. **The trio met at the station. Varsha left for Madurai.** (combine into a complex sentence)  
After the trio had met at the station, Varsha left for Madurai.

**b. This paragraph has only simple sentences. Combine them into compound and complex sentences.**

One day Ajay and Tijo went to the canal. They wanted to catch some fish. Some people were playing nearby. They chose a better place. They took out the fishing rods. Suddenly there was a loud splash. They also heard a loud scream. Both Ajay and Tijo looked up. They saw something moving in the water. Then they saw a hand waving. Someone had fallen in the water. It was Yusuf. He had jumped into the water. He wanted to swim.

**Ans:**

One day Ajay and Tijo went to the canal because they wanted to catch some fish. As some people were playing nearby they chose a better place. When they took out the fishing rods there was a loud splash. When they heard a loud scream both Ajay and Tijo looked up. They saw something moving in the water and they saw a hand waving. Someone had fallen into water and it was Yusuf. As he wanted to swim he had jumped into the water.

**c. Here is one long sentence. Split them into smaller sentences.**

Like all living things, human beings also need food in order to live as every part of the body must get a steady supply of food so that it can work properly, but first the food eaten has to be broken down through a process called digestion so that it can dissolve in the blood and carried to all parts of the body.

**Ans:**

All living things need food. Human beings also need food in order to live. Every part of the body must get a steady supply of food. Then only it can work properly. First the food eaten has to be broken down. It can be done through a process called digestion. It can dissolve in the blood. It can be carried to all parts of the body.

**WRITING**

Page: 177

**Now write a short story to explain these proverbs.**

**1 Actions speak louder than words.**

Shalini was late to school that day. She used to be a regular student and she stood first in her class. But she was a silent girl. Her silence was mistaken for arrogance by other girls and some of the teachers. Some of her friends knew that Shalini had some problem in her family and she would not reveal it to others. Her only job in the school was to study and be regular in her work. That particular day she entered the school gate half an hour late with soiled dress. She knew she would not be allowed inside her class. With that fear in her heart she walked towards her std XI. classroom. As soon as the teacher saw her, she was very angry. She did not even think of asking her reason for being late. Most of the girls in the class were happy that Shalini, the silent girl would get punishment; she might not be allowed to enter the class.

The teacher told Shalini to stand outside the class. It never happened in her life. The girls were giggling especially Lakshmi. Lakshmi was a rich girl. Her father was an industrialist but she was not that good in studies. So she was jealous of Shalini. Now she had the time to laugh at Shalini. At that time the kind hearted Principal Mrs. Shanthi came near the class. She came to Shalini and asked

her to go to her office. Lakshmi and others were still happier to see this. Shalini waited near the Principal's office for some time. When the Principal came, Shalini was called inside. She asked her the reason for her soiled dress and standing outside the class.

Shalini explained that on her way she saw a car accident. No one came forward to help the man who was inside the car. So she went to the spot, gathered some people, got an auto and took him to the hospital. She had to wait in the hospital for some time. Then she had to walk from the hospital to school as she had no money for the auto. She did not know who the man was. As this conversation was going on a man came running to Principal's office and informed that Lakshmi's father met with an accident and he was in the hospital. He wanted to take Lakshmi home. The Principal phoned to Lakshmi's mother to ascertain the news and sent for Lakshmi. When that man saw Shalini he said that she only had helped Lakshmi's father to go to hospital. When Lakshmi came to the Principal's office she came to know what had happened. She felt sorry for her behaviour. She went to hospital with Shalini in her car. On the way she praised her for her help and asked pardon for her rude behaviour.

## 2. Despair gives courage to a coward.

Murugan was from a small village. He was not a very rich man. He had a small shop to sell cool drinks, tea, coffee and some other eatables. With the profit he got out of this he was living happily with his family. He had to feed his wife and two children. His wife Sita was a home maker and she managed the family very well. It was a happy family.

One day he did not return home at his usual time. His wife was worried and asked the neighbours whether they had seen her husband anywhere. She did not get any positive reply. Murugan came back home only after 11 o' clock. His face was very dim and he sat on a chair without much words. His wife was worried and came close to him. Luckily the children went to sleep. She asked him very politely what the problem was. After a few minutes he replied that three men came to the shop and started some argument with him, which led to a fight. In that fight they damaged the shop and he had to repair that. It would cost at least Rs. 10000. His wife comforted him saying that they would find the money somehow and repair the shop.

Murugan was a coward. That night he was in despair. He was thinking deeply how to solve this problem. He thought that he should take steps to get the money from those people who were responsible for the trouble. He decided he should come out of his cowardice. Next day morning he went to the police station and lodged a complaint against those three men. The inspector was a good person; he promised him to help him. In the evening they were arrested and brought to the police station. They understood that they could not escape from this. So they promised to give money to Murugan to repair his shop. His courage helped him to get the money.

## Develop the following hints into a paragraph.

Two kings - ruled -neighbouring kingdoms. King Arya - great warrior - looked after - subjects - very well - People loved him - looking - their safety and welfare - all his subjects - very happy - healthy life - King Vaishal on the other hand - very lazy man - spend his time - entertaining - dancing – ignoring - needs or developmental - people - His people -angry - never came out of the palace -listen to their woes.

Powerful Sultan attacked - with his strong army - King Arya's army - alert - ready - preparedness - enemy - more powerful - love for King even women and children -come to the war front - fight - protect their King -a different story - King Vaishal-impending war - people started fleeing-King all by himself - not interested to protect - King - did nothing for their welfare.

King Vaishal - realized his foolishness - too late - defeated in the war and fled for his life - King Arya - defeated the Sultan -people to live in peace - King Arya -welfare of his people at heart at all times -subjects - returned his love - loyal and supportive - during testing times.

**Ans:**

There were two kings ruling neighbouring kingdoms. One was King Arya who was a great warrior. He looked after the subjects very well. People loved him for looking after their safety and welfare. All the subjects were very happy and they had healthy life. The other king was King Vaishal, who was a very lazy man. He spent his time in entertainment and dancing, ignoring the needs or development of his people. His people were angry with him. The king never came out of his palace to listen to their voice.

Once the powerful Sultan attacked the kingdoms with his strong army. King Arya's army was alert and ready with preparedness. Though the enemy army was more powerful, due to the love for the king even the women and children came out to the war front to fight and protect the king. In the kingdom of Vaishal it was a different story. To avoid the impending war the people started fleeing the battle field. The king was all alone by himself. People were not interested to protect the king who did nothing for their welfare.

King Vaishal then realised his foolishness but it was too late. He was defeated in the war and fled for his life. King Arya defeated the Sultan and his people lived in peace. King Arya had the welfare of his people at heart all the time. So his subjects returned his love. They were loyal and supportive during the testing time.

**Writing a Curriculum Vitae.****Task**

Page: 179

**Write a C V for the post of a DTP operator at ABC Publishing house, and send it to P.O. Box No. 2345 or E-mail to abcph@nomail.com.**

Name	:	Ragavendran G												
Address	:	212, Puspa Garden, Anna Nagar, Thirupur. Mobile: 9444100000 E-mail: ragagi@gmail.com												
Career objectives	:	Looking for a challenging career which demands the best of my professional ability in terms of my knowledge in this field.												
Synopsis	:	A Graduate in English from TTV College, Thirupur												
Profile	:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Good knowledge in computer</li> <li>• Good knowledge in Adeb, PDF, Photoshop</li> <li>• Good verbal and written skill</li> </ul>												
Educational Qualifications	:	Diploma in DTP B.A. English First class 12th with the aggregate 78% from GHSS, Thirupur. 10th with the aggregate 85% from GHSS Thirupur												
Experience	:	Kumaran Publication – 2 years Freelancer – 2 years												
Strength	:	Hard working Positive attitude and open minded												
Personal Details	:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Date of Birth</td> <td>:</td> <td>11th June 1993</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sex</td> <td>:</td> <td>Male</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Marital Status</td> <td>:</td> <td>Single</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Languages known</td> <td>:</td> <td>Tamil, English and Hindi</td> </tr> </table>	Date of Birth	:	11th June 1993	Sex	:	Male	Marital Status	:	Single	Languages known	:	Tamil, English and Hindi
Date of Birth	:	11th June 1993												
Sex	:	Male												
Marital Status	:	Single												
Languages known	:	Tamil, English and Hindi												

Declaration:

I hereby declare that the above cited information is true to the best of my knowledge and belief. If I am given a chance I shall prove mettle.

Sd/-

**Filling Forms**

Page: 180

**Task 1:**

You see an advertisement in the newspaper. A publishing house in Chennai has brought out a paperback edition of the complete works of Khushwant Singh. You want to buy it. You are asked to send a Demand Draft for Rs.1000/- Fill in the following DD challan in favour of 'X publishing house, New Delhi', payable at Chennai. The surcharge for Rs.1000/- is Rs.25/-

**इंडियन बँक** **Indian Bank** दिनांक/Date **7-7-18**

ठेवी कर्ज, आइबी क्रेडिट कार्ड, कर इत्यादिमध्ये भरणा करण्यासाठी चलन  
**COMMON PAY IN SLIP FOR DEPOSITS, LOANS, IB CREDIT CARD, TAXES ETC.**

(कृपया ✓ करा) कृपया नकद/आई बी चेक / अन्य बँकेच्या स्थानीय चेक / बाहेरगावचा चेक वेगवेगळ्या चलनात भरावे.  
 (Please ✓) Please use separate slips for Cash/Cheque on IB/Cheques on Other Banks Local/Other Banks Outstation.

एसबी/सीए/ओडी/ओसीसी/आरडी/Deposited at **Tirunelveli** शाखेत जमा/ Branch  
 मुदत ठेव/ऋण/कर/क्रेडिट कार्ड/अन्य खाता क्र./ क्रेडिट कार्ड क्र. **532313**  
 SB/CA/OD/OCC/RD/Term A/c No./ Credit Card No.  
 Dep/Loans/Taxes/Credit हे खाते/ A/c maintained with **Tirunelveli** शाखेत आहे/ Branch  
 Cards/Others

श्री/श्रीमती/कु/मेसर्स /For the Credit of Mr./Ms./Messrs **ABC Publishers** च्या नावे जमा  
 रुपये अक्षरी/Rs. in Words **One Thousand Only**

फक्त/only नकद/चेक द्वारा/By Cash/Cheque **₹/Rs. 1000/- पै./Ps.**

**बँकेची मुद्रा इथे उठवा**  
**AFFIX BANK SEAL HERE**

₹. 10 लाखपेक्षा जास्त रकम भरावयाची असल्यास रिजर्व बँकेला रिपोर्ट करण्यासाठी ही रकम कोटून आली याचा पूर्ण तपशील कृपया मागील पानावर भरावा / For Cash deposits of ₹10 Lakhs & above, Please furnish details of transaction including source of cash overleaf for RBI reporting.

जमाकर्त्याची सही (Signature of Remitter) **A. Ajay**  
 नाव/Name **A. Ajay**  
 पत्ता/Address **7, MG Colony, Tirunelveli.**  
 फोन/Phone No. **9442158484**  
 जमाकर्त्याचा पैन क्र./PAN of Remitter\*  
 \*(₹. 50,000/- पेक्षा जास्त रकमे साठी अनिवार्य)  
 \*(Mandatory for the amount of ₹ 50,000/- & above)

जर्नल सं./ Journal No. क्यू. सं./ Queue No.  
**SERVICE TAX CODE NO.:AAACI 1607GST 005 PAN No.:AAACI 1607G**

**Task 2:**

2(a) Fill in the following forms with imaginary details.

RAILWAY CM257

**RESERVATION / CANCELLATION REQUISITION FORM**

If you are a Medical Practitioner  
 Please tick ( ) in Box Dr.   
 (You could be of help in an emergency)

Train No & Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date of journey \_\_\_\_\_  
 Class \_\_\_\_\_ No of Berth/Seat \_\_\_\_\_  
 Station from \_\_\_\_\_ To \_\_\_\_\_  
 Boarding at \_\_\_\_\_ Reservation upto \_\_\_\_\_

S.No.	Name in Block letter(not more than 15 chars)	Sex (M/F)	Age	Concession/Travel authority No.	Choice if any
1					Lower/Upper berth
2					
3					Veg./Non-veg. Meal for Rajdhani/ Shatabdi
4					
5					
6					

**CHILDREN BELOW 5 YEARS (FOR WHOM TICKET IS NOT TO BE ISSUED)**

S.No.	Name in Block Letters	Sex	Age
1			
2			

**ONWARD/RETURN JOURNEY DETAILS**

Train No. & Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_  
 Class \_\_\_\_\_ Station from: \_\_\_\_\_ To \_\_\_\_\_  
 Name of applicant \_\_\_\_\_  
 Full Address \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of the Applicant/Rep resentativ e \_\_\_\_\_  
 Telephone No., \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_ Time \_\_\_\_\_

2 (b)

B.Pg.No. 181

Annexure-1

**RAILWAY RECRUITMENT BOARD\*** \_\_\_\_\_ **Control No. (For official use only)** \_\_\_\_\_

**APPLICATION FORM FOR CEN 01/2014 (ALP & Technicians Categories)**  
 (All applications must be submitted in A4 size 80 GSM bond paper)

1\*. **CATEGORY NUMBER - (I) Indicate your options below in order of preference in Numeric Form**

Option	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X
Cat. No.										

Paste (do not pin or staple) here your recent colour photograph of size 3.5 cm x 3.5 cm (The colour photograph should not be more than 3 months old) Not to be attested

2\*. **Choice of Railway/Unit (wherever applicable)**

1st	2nd	3rd	4th
-----	-----	-----	-----

3. **Indicate your AADHAAR Card No.** \_\_\_\_\_

4\*. **NAME OF CANDIDATE** Shri/Smt/Kum. \_\_\_\_\_

5\*. **FATHER'S NAME** Shri \_\_\_\_\_

6\*. **COMMUNITY (Tick ✓)**  UR  \*SC  \*ST  \*OBC

7\*. **DATE OF BIRTH (DD/MM/YYYY)** \_\_\_\_\_

\* Certificate to be submitted in the format as prescribed in Annexure 3 for SC/ST

8\*. **Are you Govt/PSU/Rly Employee**  Yes  No  
 If yes, have you intimated your Employer  Yes  No

9\*. **Ex-Serviceman**  Yes  No  
 Date of Attestation \_\_\_\_\_

10\*. **Person with Disability**  Yes  No  
 If yes  VH  OH  HH

If Rly. Service Date from: \_\_\_\_\_ To: \_\_\_\_\_  
 DD MM YY DD MM YY

Date of Discharge \_\_\_\_\_  
 DD MM YY

Is scribe required (Refer para 10.06 of CEN)  Yes  No

11\*. **Are you seeking fee exemption (Yes / No)**  If yes, mention\* the category No. \_\_\_\_\_ (refer para - 3.01 for details)

12\*. **DD/PO/Original Post Office Receipt**

DD/PO/Original Post Office Receipt	Number & Date	Value

\* In case of Original Post Office Receipt, Paste the slip in the reverse side of the Application Form

13\*. **Are you seeking Age Relaxation (Yes / No)**  If yes, mention\* the category No. \_\_\_\_\_ (refer para - 2.0 for details)

14\*. **Qualification (Mention only those qualifications which are prescribed for the posts applied for)**

Academic and / or Technical	Qualification	Year of passing	Subjects / Trade / Branch

15\*. **ADDRESS (FOR CORRESPONDENCE) in CAPITAL letters only.**

Name : \_\_\_\_\_  
 P.O. \_\_\_\_\_ City : \_\_\_\_\_ Distt. : \_\_\_\_\_  
 State: \_\_\_\_\_ PIN CODE \_\_\_\_\_

16. **NEAREST RAILWAY STATION (For SC/ST candidates only)** \_\_\_\_\_

17\*. **Please copy the following declaration in the space provided below, in running handwriting (NOT in CAPITAL letters)**

"All the details given by me in the Application Form are true and complete to the best of my knowledge. I understand that I may be issued with Call letter for the exam on the basis of above information and mere issue of Call letter will not confer on me any right to be eligible for the post. I also understand that in case any of my statements are found to be untrue at any stage of recruitment or thereafter, I shall be disqualified forthwith for the post applied for and I shall be liable for any other penal action under the extant rules"

\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

18\*. **Left Thumb Impression of candidate in this box**

Candidate's Signature (NOT in CAPITAL letters)  
 Date : \_\_\_\_\_

Note : \* The column 1, 2, 4 to 15 & 17, 18 are mandatory.  
 Non filling up of these columns will render your application totally invalid.  
 \* Incase still continuing, write NA (Not Applicable)

Mobile No. \_\_\_\_\_

2 (b)



**POST OFFICE SAVINGS BANK**

**ATM CARD/Internet/Mobile/SMS banking REQUEST FORM**

Post Office	Date	SOL ID
Account Number	CIFID	

**For Applicant(s)**

1. ATM Card required for (please tick ✓ the empty box)

Self	All Joint Account Holders
------	---------------------------

2. Name to be printed (embossed) on the Card (in Capital Letters)

Date of Birth

1		
2		
3		

3. Please tick relevant requirement from below:

New Card (please tick one) 1. Insta Card  (OR) 2. Personalized Card   
 Internet Banking Request  Mobile Banking Request  SMS Banking   
 PIN regeneration request- Net Banking PIN  Mobile banking  ATM Card Pin   
 Cancellation of ATM card (Please provide card number(s)) \_\_\_\_\_

4. Internet Banking/Mobile banking and SMS alerts: (Please tick wherever applicable. Applicable only for the first time)

	Applicant (1)	Applicant (2)	Applicant(3)
Internet Banking			
Mobile Banking			
SMS Alert			
Mother's maiden Name			

**Declarations/Terms & Conditions**

I/We declare that above information is correct. I/We authorize Department of Posts to debit/ recover the charges as applicable from time to time from my/our account for withdrawals using my ATM/Debit Card or Internet/Mobile/SMS Banking. I/We undertake to maintain sufficient funds excluding the minimum balance stipulated in my account. I/We will accept full responsibility for transactions done through my/our ATM/Debit Card or Internet/Mobile/SMS Banking and agree not to make claims against Department of Posts in respect thereto.

Signature/Thumb Impression:- 1<sup>st</sup> Applicant                      2<sup>nd</sup> Applicant                      3<sup>rd</sup> Applicant

**For Office Use only**

Certified that I have verified the documents submitted with this application form and confirm that KYC norms are fully complied with.

Following items issued:-

Insta ATM/Debit Card No. with PIN.....

Date of Issue.....

Application for Internet/Mobile/SMS Banking accepted.

Signature of Chief/Sr./Sub/ Postmaster

Date Stamp of Post Office



# THE HOLLOW CROWN

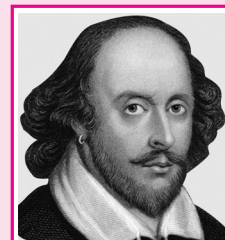
(from Richard II)

William Shakespeare

POEM

### About the Author

<b>Author</b>	:	William Shakespeare
<b>Born</b>	:	26th April, 1564 - England.
<b>Occupation</b>	:	• Playwright • Poet • Actor
<b>Famous Works</b>	:	• Hamlet • King Lear • Othello • As you Like it • Julius Caesar • Antony and Cleopatra : 154 Sonnets
<b>Known as</b>	:	• The Bard of Avon • England's National Poet
<b>Died</b>	:	23 <sup>rd</sup> April, 1616.



### Warm Up

Page: 183

a. **Work with a partner and take this short quiz to find out how well-informed you are about history.**

❖ **Name a few wars and battles you have read about.**

- The First World war
- The Second World war
- The Indo-Chinese war
- The Vietnam War
- The Indo-Pak War
- The Karkil War
- The Battle of Panipet
- The Battle of Trafalgar

❖ **What is the difference between a war and a battle?**

**Battle** a fight between opposing armies, groups of ships, group of people etc. especially one that is part of a larger war.

**War** a period of fighting between two or more countries or between opposing groups within a country.

❖ **Why do rulers wage wars and battles?**

- To prove military supremacy.
- To establish or control trade and commerce.
- To plunder the wealth of other nations.
- To prove establish supremacy.

❖ **Is the outcome of a war always fair?**

Everything is fair in love and war. So in war the soldiers would not follow any human rules. So it is not always fair. It destroys and disorients the lives of innocent people. It makes them rootless and plunges them into abysmal poverty.

❖ **Do you think rulers understand the true meaning of life – in defeat or in victory?**

Usually success does not end in itself. The victim would try to wage a war against the victor and the victor would try to wage war against others. History proves this. The rulers do not understand the meaning of life. They want only victory even if the war destroys people. Of course Emperor Ashoka learnt the true meaning of life in victory by observing how destructive the war had been.

❖ **Can you name a few kings and leaders who have fallen from glory to disgrace?**

- Mark Antony
- Julius Caesar
- Nero
- Charles II
- Napoleon
- Hitler
- Mussolini

**SUMMARY**

'The Hollow Crown' is an extract from William Shakespeare's play King Richard II. King Richard was attacked by his cousin Bolingbroke. Richard had a hope that he would get some more soldiers to fight for him. But later he realised that no one would come to his rescue. So he lost all his hope and was getting ready to die.

King Richard II surrendered to his rebellious cousin, Bolingbroke. He experienced deep distress at the horror of his circumstances. In that desperate situation he spoke of graves, worms, epitaphs and other things connected with death. He spoke of how people leave nothing behind and can call nothing their own, except for the small patch of barren-earth, where they will be buried. King Richard yielded to dejection and talked of all the different ways in which defeated kings suffer – how some had been deposed, slain in war, poisoned by their wives and so forth.

He attributed this loss of lives to death who he personified as the jester who watches over the shoulder of every ruler, who mocks kings by allowing them to think their human flesh like unconquerable brass. However, Death penetrates through the castle walls, silently and unnoticed like a sharp pin thus bidding farewell to him and all his pride forever. Finally, Richard appealed to his soldiers not to mock his mere flesh and blood by showing reverence and respect to him. He added that he too needed bread to live, felt want, tasted grief and needed friends. He concluded thus, urging his men not to call a king as he was only human, just like the rest of them.

**GLOSSARY**

Page: 185

epitaphs	short pieces of writing inscribed on tombstones in memory of the dead
executors	persons who put someone's terms of will into effect
bequeath	pass on something to the next generation by means of a will
deposed	removed from office or power
slain	killed
antic	someone who draws attention through silly or funny acts (here a court jester)
scoffing	expressing mockery
grinning	smiling wildly
monarchize	rule, carry out the duties and functions of a ruler
impregnable	impossible to pass through
ceremonious	being very formal

**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**

Page: 184

- ⊙ **Pick out the phrase that suggests that the King Richard was sorrowful.**

Sorrow on the bosom of the earth.

⊙ **Why does the king suggest that is now time for his will to be executed?**

The king thinks that his death is very near so he suggests that it. It is time for his will to be executed.

⊙ **What is the only thing we bequeath to our descendants?**

We bequeath only our buried dead bodies to our descendants.

⊙ **What are the vanquished men left with?**

The vanquished men are left with death only.

⊙ **What does the 'small' model refer to here?**

The 'small model' refers to our body's flesh here.

⊙ **What does a monarch's crown symbolize?**

A monarch's crown symbolizes power.

⊙ **What mocks the ruler's power and pomp?**

Death mocks the ruler's power and pomp.

**A. Fill in the blanks using the words given in the box to complete the summary of the poem.**

Page: 186

King Richard second surrendered to his (a) **rebellious** cousin, Bolingbroke. He experienced deep distress at the horror of his circumstances. In that desperate situation he spoke of (b) **graves**, (c) **worms**, (d) **epitaphs** and other things connected with death. He spoke of how people leave nothing behind and can call nothing their own, except for the small patch of (e) **barren-earth**, where they will be buried. King Richard yielded to dejection and talked of all the different ways in which defeated kings suffer how some had been deposed, (f) **slain** in war, (g) **poisoned** by their wives and so forth. He attributed this loss of lives to (h) **death** who he personified as the jester who watches over the shoulder of every ruler, who mocks kings by allowing them to think their human flesh was like (i) **impregnable** brass. However, Death penetrates through the castle walls, silently and unnoticed like a sharp (j) **pin** thus bidding (k) **farewell** to him and all his pride forever. Finally, Richard appealed to his soldiers not to mock his mere flesh and blood by showing (l) **reverence** and respect to him. He added that he too needed bread to lice, felt want, tasted (m) **grief** and needed (n) **friends**. He concluded thus, urging his men not to call a (o) **king** as he was only human, just like the rest of them.

barren-earth	friends	graves	slain	rebellious
poisoned	worms	grief	impregnable	epitaphs
death	farewell	reverence	king	pin

**B.**

**a. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words from the box and complete the statements suitably.**

bequeath	antics	monarchise	impregnable	hollow
----------	--------	------------	-------------	--------

- Shravan never keeps his promises. His friends know that his words are **hollow**.
- The spectators died laughing at the **antics** of the clown.
- The business woman wished to **bequeath** all her riches to an orphanage after her death.

4. The fortress was **impregnable** and could not be conquered by the enemies.
5. Alexander the great, wished to conquer many lands and **monarchise** the entire world.

**b. Complete the passage given below with suitable words from the box.**

Page: 187

Lima was a (a) **vain** and (b) **conceited** woman, kept (c) **scoffing** at her colleagues and went on taxing them with hard labour. Though they were (d) **ceremonious** to her, she being their head, they were offended and filled with (e) **sorrow**. It so happened, that Lima was (f) **deposed** from her high position due to a serious blunder she had committed. Lima, having lost all her (g) **reverence** and glory, realised how arrogant she had been. She gave up her pride and with (h) **pomp** sought an apology from everyone. She thus turned over a new leaf and bid (i) **farewell** to them.

farewell	ceremonious	deposed	reverence	vain
pomp	conceited	sorrow	scoffing	

**C. From your understanding of the poem, answer the following questions briefly in a sentence or two.**

**1. What do the three words, 'graves' worms and epitaphs', refer to?**

The words, 'Graves, worms and epitaphs' refer to death.

**2. What does the executor mentioned in the poem do?**

The executor will execute the will.

**3. Who is Bolingbroke? Is he a friend or foe?**

Bolingbroke is a cousin of Richard II. He is a foe to Richard II.

**4. Are all the deposed kings slain by the deposer?**

Yes, all the deposed kings are slain by the deposer.

**5. What does the crown of rulers stand for?**

The crown of rulers stands for the power of the king.

**6. What hides within the crown and laughs the king's grandeur?**

The hollow hides within the crown and laughs at the king's grandeur.

**7. What does 'flesh' mean here?**

'Flesh' means body here.

**8. What are the various functions and objects given up a defeated king?**

The defeated king should not expect any reverence from his followers. He throws away respect, tradition, form and his ceremonious duty.

**9. How does the king establish that he and his subjects are equal in the end?**

The king lives with bread, feels lack of something, tastes grief and needs friends as all other subjects. So he is equal to his subjects.

**10. Bring out King Richard's feelings when he was defeated.**

King Richard suffered from dejection and fear of death. He understood that the victorious king would come and get his life. He was in no way different from his subjects.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Read the following sets of poetic lines and answer the questions that follow

1. *“Let’s talk of graves, of worms and epitaphs  
Make dust our paper and with rainy eyes”*

a) **What do these words – graves, worms and epitaphs – stand for?**

These words stand for death.

b) **What figure of speech is used by the poet in the second line?**

The poet used metaphor in the second line.

2. *“Let’s choose executors and talk of wills  
And yet not so – for what can we bequeath  
Save deposed bodies to the ground?”*

a) **Why does the king want to call the executor?**

He wants his executors to carry out what is mentioned in the will.

b) **According to the king what can he pass on to the next generation?**

He can pass on to the next generation only the deposed body which will be buried in the ground

3. *“And that small model of the barren earth  
Which serves as paste and cover to our bodies”*

a) **What is the meaning of ‘small model of the barren earth’?**

‘Small model of the barren earth’ means the body’s flesh which stands for all perishable things.

b) **Give the meaning of the second line.**

The flesh serves as a paste in our body to cover the bones to give our shape.

4. *“How some have been depos’d, some slain in war,  
Some haunted by the ghosts they have deposed,  
Some poisoned by their wives, some sleeping kill’d”*

a) **How were the lives of the past kings?**

Some were killed in the war, some were troubled by the ghosts of the kings whom they had killed, some were poisoned by their wives and some were killed when they were in sleep.

b) **Where do we get these references?**

We get these references from different plays of Shakespeare.

5. *“For you have but mistook me all this while  
I live with bread like you feel want,  
Taste grief, need friends –”*

a) **Who mistook whom?**

The people mistook the king.

b) **Why is it a mistake?**

People mistook the king that he was different from others because he was respected but the king was not different from others. He lived on food, he had grief and he too wanted friends. So he was also an ordinary man.

## TEXTUAL EXERCISES

### D. Explain the following lines with reference to the context in about 5 to 8 lines.

- i. *“Our lands, our lives, and all, are Bolingbroke’s,  
And nothing can we call our own but death.”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. He says now nothing belongs to him. Whatever he has will be taken over by Bolingbroke after his victory. Their land and their life now belong to Bolingbroke. They are left with only one thing ie. their death.

- ii. *“All murdered – for within the hollow crown  
That rounds the moral temples of a king  
Keeps Death his court, ....”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. All the kings were killed – some were poisoned by their wives, some were slain in war, some were killed while sleeping. The king’s crown is hollow in the middle which means the power of the king is not solid and strong. Death is like a jester who grants the king temporary licence to rule.

- iii. *“Comes at the last, and with a little pin  
Bores through his castle wall and farewell king!”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. People may think that King’s body cannot be penetrated. But at last death comes like a pin and enters the body to kill him. So we have to bid farewell to the king.

- iv. *“How can you say to me, I am a king?”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. Kings are no way better than the

subjects. The king lives with bread, feels lack of something, tastes in grief and needs friends as all other subjects. So he is equal to his subjects. He is asking his followers at the end of the passage how they could call him a king.

### ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS

Explain the following lines with reference to the context in about 5 to 8 lines.

1. *“For God’s sake let us sit upon the ground  
And tell sad stories of the death of kings”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. He says that nothing is left with him except his life. That will also be taken away by his cousin Bolingbroke. So they have nothing to do then. He asks his followers to sit on the ground and talk the tragic lives of the kings who were killed in the war.

2. *“Allow him a breath, a little scene,  
To monarchize, be fear’s, and kill with looks”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. He says that death is the permanent thing for any king. Before the death, they get the breath which makes them live for a short time. During this short time they rule and carry out the duties and functions of a ruler.

3. *“Infusing him with self and vain conceit,  
As if this flesh which walls about our life  
Were brass impregnable .....”*

**Reference:**

These lines are taken from the poem ‘The Hollow Crown’ which is an excerpt from Shakespeare’s Richard II.

**Explanation:**

His cousin Bolingbroke attacked him and he knew that he would be defeated. He was with his loyal followers. At the time of utter dejection he uttered these words. He says the king has a short time to live in the world. During this time the king feels that the flesh he has is like a brass which is very strong and nothing can penetrate it. But death comes like a pin and gives farewell to the king.

### E. SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Working with your partner, discuss the following adages and share your views with the class. You may need to give your ideas and justify your point of view. Remember to take turns while making your presentation/ short speech.

**a. War begets war**

War is outcome of jealousy, pride and greed. War does not stop by itself. The victor will be confident to start another war and the vanquished will try to take revenge. So at the end of the war another war will be on the way. History makes it clear that the kings who were involved in wars would not be satisfied with one victory. They would try to prove their valour again and again. Those who lost the battle also would try again to get victory. In any case war brings another war at the end of one.

**b. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.**

These are Shakespeare's words. He likes to emphasize that kings will always live in tension and stress. Their duty is such that they have to take care of their subjects and the growth of the country. He should be careful that the neighbouring king should not attack his kingdom. So all the time he would be vigilant and motivate the soldiers to protect the kingdom. Others may think proud of the king who wears the crown but the one who wears the crown will always feel uneasy.

**F. POETIC DEVICES**

<b>Personification</b>	When human traits are given to non-human or inanimate objects.
<b>Interrogation</b>	When a question is asked not for the sake of getting an answer, but to express a point more emphatically.
<b>Metaphor</b>	When two unlike objects or things having some common qualities are compared.
<b>Rhetorical Question</b>	When a question is formed to make a point rather than to elicit an answer.
<b>Internal Rhyme</b>	When rhyming words are used within a single line.

**a. Read the poem once again carefully and identify the figure of speech that has been used in each of the following lines from the poem.**

Page: 188

i. *"Let's talk of graves, of worms, and epitaphs,  
Make dust our paper, and with rainy eyes  
Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth."*

Metaphor.

ii. *"And yet not so – for what can we bequeath  
Save our deposed bodies to the ground?"*

Rhetorical Question.

iii. *"Keep Death his court, and there the antic sits, ...."*

Personification.

iv. *"How can you say to me, I am a king?"*

Rhetorical Question.

v. *"Scoffing his state and grinning at his prompt, ...."*

Alliteration.

vi. *"Bores through his castle wall, and farewell king!"*

Metaphor.

**b. Pick out the alliteration from the following lines.**

i. *"Our lands, our lives, and all, are Bolingbroke's  
lands – lives*

ii. **“And tell sad stories of the death of kings.”**

sad – stories

iii. **“Comes at the last, and with a little pin.”**

last – little

**G. Based on your reading of King Richard’s speech, answer the following questions in about 100 – 150 words each. You may add your own ideas if required to present and justify your point of view.**

**1. What are the causes for King Richard’s grief?**

‘The Hollow Crown’ is an excerpt from Richard II written by Shakespeare. King Richard was attacked by his cousin Bolingbroke and King Richard realised that he would not get any help from others. He knew that he would be defeated and that would lead to his death. So he was in great grief and expressed his grief to his loyal followers in this speech. The main cause for his grief is fear of failure and death. So in this desperate situation he speaks of worms, graves and epitaphs. All these are connected to death and dead bodies. He may be a great king with a great palace and lots of land under his control. But now he has to leave everything and he may own a small patch of land where his body will be buried. In his dejection he thinks of the slain kings in the war. Once he thought his life was safe as a king but now he feels that death pricks him like a pin at the end. He realises that he is in no way better than his subjects.

**2. How are eternal truths and wisdom brought to the readers here?**

‘The Hollow Crown’ is an excerpt from Richard II written by Shakespeare. King Richard was attacked by his cousin Bolingbroke and King Richard realised that he would not get any help from others. He knew that he would be defeated and that would lead to his death. So he was in great grief and expressed his grief to his loyal followers in this speech. Shakespeare in this speech brings about the truth of human life. Wise men will never be proud of vanity. The king’s life may seem to others glamorous and safe. The truth is totally different. ‘Uneasy lies the head that wears the crown’ – this is the line from Shakespeare. This is the ground reality of the lives of kings. The eternal truth is brought out by Richard who was dejected because of the fear of defeat and death. He says that at the end Man owns only a small patch of land where he is buried. Whether he is a king or a poor man, this is the end of all men. The speech expresses the wisdom of the king. The truth is after the death of a person he will be buried and his body will be eaten by worms. He has grave and an epitaph which are the only permanent things by which he may be remembered. Thus eternal truths and wisdom are brought to the readers.

**3. Death has been cited in many ways in this monologue. Identify the poetic devices used in those references.**

i. **“Let’s talk of graves, of worms and epitaphs”**

Internal Rhyming.

ii. **“Make dust our paper, and with rainy eyes”**

Metaphor.

iii. **“Save our deposed bodies to the ground?”**

Rhetorical Question.

iv. **“And that small model of the barren earth**

**Which serves as paste and cover to our bodies”**

Simile.

- v. *“Keeps Death his court, and there the antic sits,”*  
Personification.
- vi. *“Comes at the last, and with a little pin  
Bores through his castle wall, and farewell king!”*  
Metaphor.
- vii. *“How can you say to me, I am a king?”*  
Interrogation.

**4. Who does the future generation remember easily – the victor or vanquished? Give reason. Also cite relevant references from King Richard’s speech.**

Future generation remembers mostly the victor, not the vanquished. The victor always stands high in the minds of people. Moreover the coming generation reads history which talks high of the victor – his courage, his strategy, the proven techniques and his work. Alexander is remembered even today. All those who were lost to him are just mentioned in the history book but people forget their names. In war, the victor gets all that is owned by the vanquished and he could utilise that for the benefit of his people. The vanquished lives only in shame and dishonour. In Richard’s speech he mentions that the king becomes an ordinary person when he loses a battle. He has nothing of his own except his death. Only the place where he will be buried will belong to him. The victor takes all the lands from the vanquished. He says the vanquished can expect only death.

**ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH**

**1. What does Shakespeare say about Richard II in the poem ‘Hallow Crown’?**

‘The Hallow Crown’ is an extract from William Shakespeare’s play King Richard II. King Richard was attacked by his cousin Bolingbroke. Richard had a hope that he would get some more soldiers to fight for him. But later he realised that no one would come to his rescue. So he lost all his hope and was ready to die. He experienced deep distress at the horror of his circumstances. In that desperate situation he spoke of graves, worms, epitaphs and other things connected with death. King Richard yielded to dejection and talked of all the different ways in which defeated kings suffer – how some had been deposed, slain in war, poisoned by their wives and so forth. He attributed this loss of lives to death. However, Death penetrates through the castle walls, silently and unnoticed like a sharp pin thus bidding farewell to him and all his pride forever. Finally, Richard appealed to his soldiers not to mock his mere flesh and blood by showing reverence and respect to him. He added that he too needed bread to live, felt want, tasted grief and needed friends. He concluded thus, urging his men not to call a king as he was only human, just like the rest of them.

\*\*◆◆\*\*

UNIT

6

**THE NEVER - NEVER NEST**  
(Play)

Cedric Mount

SUPPLEMENTARY

About the Author

**Author** : Cedric Mount  
**Born** : 13th April, 1889 - California.  
**Career** : Playwright  
**Famous Works** : • Twentieth Century • To cut a Long Story Short  
 • Nature Abhors a Vacuum  
**Speciality** : • One - act plays • Satire • Wit • Humour • Insightful



Warm Up

A. What are the essentials one needs to lead a comfortable life? Fill in the empty bubbles with some of them.



B. List six gadgets that you want to purchase. Write them according to your priorities and state the reasons.

S. No.	Gadgets	Reasons
1.	Gas Stove	For preparing food, saving time and fuel
2.	A Mixer	For getting different powders, chutneys and fruit juices
3.	A Grinder	For grinding flour for idlies and dosas etc.
4.	A Fridge	For keeping things fresh
5.	A Washing Machine	For washing clothes
6.	A Water Purifier	For converting ground water into R. O. water

**C. Answer the following questions.****a) Do you think you can afford to buy all of these at once?**

No, I cannot afford to buy all these at once. With savings, I can buy them one by one based on my priorities.

**b) We may not have money to buy all our wants at the same time. In such a situation, what are the options available?**

We can buy the most necessary appliance first. Then one by one others may be bought according to requirements. The other option is to buy them on installment basis.

**c) Expand EMI.**

Equated Monthly Installment.

**SUMMARY**

Jack and Jill, a young couple led a very luxurious life living in a well-furnished house at New Hampstead. Aunt Jane paid a visit to their house. She was delighted to see their house and the furnishing. Jack and Jill had all modern comforts that included a radiogram, a car, a refrigerator and a piano. Aunt Jane was very much pleased by their luxurious lifestyle. Jack and Jill were very proud to call their house a 'Little Nest'. Jack told Aunt Jane that all their comforts were due to her. Aunt Jane did not understand how she was responsible for those luxuries. She recalled the wedding gift of a 200 pounds cheque that she had given the couple. She thought she might have written 2000 by mistake. Jill cleared that the cheque was only for 200.

It surprised her how they could afford to pay the rent for such a magnificent house. Jack told her that he did not pay the rent. He in fact owned the house. Aunt Jane was astonished to hear it. Jack explained to his Aunt that it was uneconomic to pay the rent year after year and move to a new house. So they had purchased the house by installments. They had to pay initially only ten pounds in cash and a few quarterly installments. They could live in the house which would ultimately be theirs.

Aunt Jane was eager to know whether the car belonged to him. Jack replied that he had bought that too by installments. She thought that the sofa didn't belong to Jack and so she refused to sit in it. Aunt Jane questioned Jack about his earnings. Jack told Aunt Jane that he earned about six pounds a week. His installments came to nearly seven pounds eight (shilling) and eight pence a week. Aunt Jane was even more shocked to hear it. She asked Jack, how he managed the excess money to pay his installments. Jack replied that he borrowed money from Thrift Providence Fund to pay his installments.

Aunt Jane was disgusted when she learnt that Jack had bought everything in installments. She decided to go home immediately. Jack offered to drive her to the station but she refused to be driven in the car that did not belong to Jack. She told them 'Cash Down' had always been her motto and advised Jack and Jill to buy things in cash. Aunt Jane opened her handbag and gave them a little cheque. She advised them to pay at least one of their bills. In this way at least one item would be really theirs. Jack accompanied to see her off at the bus station.

Jill was very happy and grateful to her Aunt Jane for her present of a cheque for ten pounds. She sent the cheque immediately to Dr. Martin through their nurse. Jack, meanwhile, came back and he planned to pay off the two next installments on the car. Jill told him that she had already sent it for something else. Jack got angry when he heard that the cheque had gone to Dr. Martin. He thought it to be wastage of money. Jill turned emotional and shed tears. She told him that he did not understand her real purpose in doing that. She told him that they had to pay one more installment to clear up the medical bill of their child's birth and the baby would be really theirs.

## GLOSSARY

Page: 195

lounge	a place in a home or public building for leisure activities, living room
cosy	comfortable
installment	one of the parts into which a debt is divided when payment is made at intervals
absurd	ridiculously unreasonable and meaningless
propose	intend to do something
realise	to understand or become aware of
thingummies	small articles the names of which are not remembered
motto	a short sentence or phrase that expresses a rule guiding the behaviour of a particular person or group
endorse	to make over to another
tartar	a person of irritable temper
possessed	completely controlled by an evil spirit


**TEXTUAL EXERCISES**
**A. Reading Comprehension Questions.****1. What did Aunt Jane like about Jack's little nest?**

Aunt Jane liked the charming comfortable little room and the furniture.

**2. Aunt Jane seemed to think that there was mistake in the wedding present she had given Jack. Why?**

Aunt Jane had presented a cheque for two hundred pounds as a wedding gift to Jack. Jack told her they could live in such a wonderful house with cosy furniture because of her wedding gift. She knew that with just two hundred pounds they could not buy all their items and the house. So she thought by mistake she might have written two thousand instead of two hundred.

**3. What would make jack the owner instead of being the tenant?**

Jack bought everything in installment and the house he bought only for ten pounds. The remaining money he would pay in installments. He need not pay rent. So he became the owner instead of being the tenant.

**4. What sounded absurd to Aunt Jane?**

Jack had to pay every month seven pounds and eight and eight pence every week as installment but his salary was only six pounds. This sounded absurd to Aunt Jane.

**5. How did Jack manage to pay seven pounds and eight and eight pence out of six pounds?**

He borrowed the remaining money from Thrift and Providence Trust Corporation.

**6. What advice did Aunt Jane offer the couple?**

She advised them not to get anything in installments and asked them to buy things with cash in hand.

**7. For what purpose did Jill wish to use the cheque given by Aunt Jane?**

Jill wished to use the cheque to clear the account of the doctor from whom they bought the child.

8. **'Just one more installment and the BABY'S REALLY OURS.'** This tells us that the couple **does not have a child.**

**B. Answer the following questions in about a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.**

1. **Why is there a double negative in the title: 'The Never – Never Nest'? Elucidate with reasons from the play.**

'The Never – Never Nest' by Cedric Mount – modern life – installment system – not owners - feeling of ownership – family of Jack and Jill – everything in installment – seems to belong to them – Never – Never – their own – borrows again and again

Cedric Mount in his play 'The Never – Never Nest' gives his opinion on the modern life. People are happy with the system of installments and without any thinking of the consequences they go for buying things – necessary and unnecessary – in installments. They are given to understand they are the owners of the articles they possess. But in reality it is not true. In his play he introduces a family of Jack and Jill. They buy everything – a cosy house, a car, a refrigerator, a radiogram and furniture – in installments without having enough income to pay monthly installments. The comfortable nest seems to belong to them but in reality it belongs to someone who has given the loan to them. The author uses double negative – Never, Never – in the title to emphasise the point that it will never become the property of Jack. The double negative is used for the sake of emphasis. Jack's weekly pay is only six pounds but he has to pay seven pounds and eight and eight pence every week. To make up the balance he again borrows from Thrift and Provident Trust. In this way he will never pay back his debt and they will never own the house. So it will always remain a 'never – never nest'

2. **Bring out the humorous elements in the play.**

Page: 196

'The Never – Never Nest' by Cedric Mount – modern life – installment system – not owners – feeling of ownership – family of Jack and Jill – buy everything installment – Aunt Jane's visit – comes to know installment – refuses to use anything – owner of some parts – Jill pays to own the child

Cedric Mount in his play 'The Never – Never Nest' gives his opinion on the modern life. People are happy with the system of installments and without any thinking of the consequences they go for buying things – necessary and unnecessary – in installments. They are given to understand they are the owners of the articles they possess. But in reality it is not true. In his play he introduces a family of Jack and Jill. They buy everything – a cosy house, a car, a refrigerator, a radiogram and furniture – in installments without having enough income to pay monthly installments. Aunt Jane visits their house and without knowing that it was bought in installment basis she appreciates Jack. Then slowly she comes to know that everything has been bought in installments and nothing belongs to him in whole. With the money he has paid, he has the claim for some parts in everything. Aunt Jane refuses to sit on the sofa because it belongs to someone else. The steering wheel, one of the tyres and two cylinders of the car only belong to Jack. Jack is trying to manage to pay seven pounds and eight and eight pence from his salary of six pounds. At the end Jill pays the last installment to the doctor to own the child.

### 3. How does the play 'The Never – Never Nest' expose the harsh reality of modern living?

'The Never – Never Nest' by Cedric Mount – modern life – installment system – not owners – feeling of ownership – family of Jack and Jill – buy everything installment – owner of some parts – reality of many house – wish for luxury – loan for everything – seven pounds and eight and eight pence – six pounds – borrows from Thrift and Provident Trust

Cedric Mount in his play 'The Never – Never Nest' gives his opinion on the modern life. People are happy with the system of installments and without any thinking of the consequences they go for buying things – necessary and unnecessary – in installments. They are given to understand they are the owners of the articles they possess. But in reality it is not true. In his play he introduces the family of Jack and Jill. They buy everything – a cosy house, a car, a refrigerator, a radiogram and furniture – in installments without having enough income to pay monthly installments. This is reality of many households in the modern world. Men and women are pulled here and there with their wish to lead a luxurious life and the loan agencies utilise this mentality for their benefits. They come forward to give loan of any amount to such people. They borrow money beyond their capacity. In this play Jack has to pay every week seven pounds and eight and eight pence but his salary is only six pounds per week. To make up the balance he borrows from Thrift and Provident Trust. In this way the modern man is in the vicious circle of borrowing and paying.

### 4. Jill said that they owned the steering wheel of car, one of the tyres, two of the cylinders and leg of a sofa. What does this convey?

'The Never – Never Nest' by Cedric Mount – modern life – installment system – not owners - feeling of ownership – family of Jack and Jill – everything in installment – seems to belong to them – Never – Never – their own – owner of some parts – borrows again and again

Cedric Mount in his play 'The Never – Never Nest' gives his opinion on the modern life. People are happy with the system of installments and without any thinking of the consequences they go for buying things – necessary and unnecessary – in installments. They are given to understand they are the owners of the articles they possess. But in reality it is not true. In his play he introduces a family of Jack and Jill. They buy everything – a cosy house, a car, a refrigerator, a radiogram and furniture – in installments without having enough income to pay monthly installments. With the money he has paid, he has the claim for some parts in everything. He has a car but he cannot claim the car as his own. So far what he has paid for the car loan is only for the steering wheel, one of the tyres, two of the cylinders. In the same way he has paid only for one leg of the sofa. It clearly conveys that Jack cannot claim the ownership of anything. He may have many articles in his house but he has paid only for some parts of them.

#### ADDITIONAL PARAGRAPH

Answer the following questions in about a paragraph of 100 – 150 words each.

#### 1. How does Cedric Mount attack the installment system of the modern society?

Jack and Jill, a young couple led a very luxurious life living in a well-furnished house at New Hampstead. Aunt Jane paid a visit to their house. She was delighted to see their house and the furniture. Jack and Jill had all modern comforts that included a radiogram, a car, a refrigerator and a

piano. Jack told Aunt Jane that all their comforts were due to her. It surprised her to know that they owned the house. Jack explained to his Aunt that it was uneconomic to pay the rent year after year and move to a new house. So they had purchased the house on installments. They had to pay initially only ten pounds in cash and a few quarterly installments. Then he said that he bought his car, piano and the radiogram in the same way. Jack told Aunt Jane that he earned about six pounds a week. His installments came to nearly seven pounds eight (shilling) and eight pence a week. Aunt Jane was even more shocked to hear it. She asked Jack, how he managed the excess money to pay his installments. Jack replied that he borrowed money from Thrift Providence Fund to pay his installments. This is the modern life.

### C. LISTENING ACTIVITY

Listen to the passage read out aloud by the teacher or played on a recorder and answer the questions that follow.

#### Questions:

- i. The speaker says that our income is sufficient to meet our needs. Is it true or false? **Ans: False.**
- ii. EMI is the only \_\_\_\_\_ for people who buy very expensive things.
  - a) consolation
  - b) setback
  - c) option
  - d) debt**Ans: c**
- iii. One is able to buy costly things with \_\_\_\_\_ power offered by EMI.
  - a) physical
  - b) withstanding
  - c) honorary
  - d) monetary**Ans: d**
- iv. If people fail to pay EMIs, they may be subjected to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a) expulsion
  - b) high pressure
  - c) legal action
  - d) dejection**Ans: c**
- v. People should learn to spend \_\_\_\_\_ their means.
  - a) within
  - b) beyond
  - c) above
  - d) beneath**Ans: a**

### D. SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Based on your understanding of the play 'The Never – Never Nest', organise a classroom debate on the topic 'Is Equated Monthly Installment Scheme' a boon or a bane to middle-class families.

The 'Equated Monthly Installment Scheme' is for those who want to buy things beyond their financial capacity. Everyone wants to enjoy a luxurious life with a big house, a car and all other amenities for the house. We try to imitate others in this regard. Is it a boon or a bane to middle class families is a difficult question to answer. It is difficult for a middle class family to own a house with the money they have. Now a question comes how much he can borrow to build or buy a house. Is it within his capacity or beyond his capacity? Can he pay the EMI with the salary he has? Is the interest he pays worth? If he can plan according to this, it is a boon. But most of the time people go for a big house which they don't need. So they have to pay higher EMI which may be difficult for them to pay from their salary. If a situation arises like this it is a bane. Most of the time the EMI scheme has become a bane for many middle-class families.

**E. WRITING TASK**

**Aunt Jane was shocked to see the life of Jack and Jill during her visit to their place. Put yourselves in the place of Aunt Jane and write a letter to the couple advising them not to spend beyond their means. Make more suggestions to enable them lead a debt-free life.**

Coimbatore,  
28 December, 2018.

Dear Jack,

My visit to your house was pleasant. Thank you for your hospitality. I do appreciate your wife for the way she manages your family. But I feel I should, as a good cousin, put forth certain things to you in detail. I could not talk to you because of the presence of your wife; I was not sure how she would take my words. This is regarding the things you have bought in installments. I think many things are not that necessary for a family. Moreover your house need not be that big for your small family. Of course, we need a car. Should we need such a big car which demands a huge EMI? I am sure that what you earn may be just enough for EMIs or little less than that. It is not fair for any family to get loan for daily needs. It will put you in a big financial crunch. Your EMIs and your daily expenditure should be within your salary. If some urgent need comes what will you do? Again you will go for borrowing money. Then it is endless. Now you cannot do anything with the articles you have bought. Try to be prudent in spending money. It may be difficult in the beginning; as time goes it will become your habit. Don't bring your expenditure more than what you receive monthly. Otherwise try to go for some extra job to earn some more money monthly. Please don't take it in the bad sense. I am interested in your life so I am writing to you. My wishes to your wife too.

Yours lovingly,  
Aunt Jane.

\*\*\*♦\*\*\*

UNIT

6

ICT CORNER

FORM FILLING



Apply for a Position **2**

Please fill out the information as accurate as possible. **3**

Personal Info	<b>4</b>	▶
Education	<b>5</b>	▶
Employment History	<b>6</b>	▶
References	<b>7</b>	▶
Position	<b>8</b>	▶

Signature

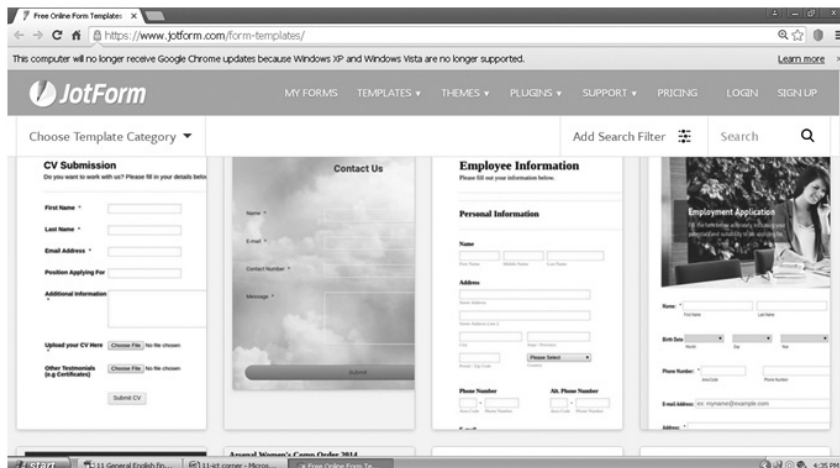
**9**

---

[Clear](#)

**10**

Apply to Position



## Job Application

Please complete the form below to apply for a position with us.

**Full Name \***

First Name Middle Name Last Name

**Current Address**

Street Address

Street Address Line 2

City

State / Province



Postal / Zip Code

Country

**Email Address \***

**Phone Number**

 - 

Area Code Phone Number

**Applying for Position \***

**Start date**

 /  / 

Month Day Year

